

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference. For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

FAX Option Type 270 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Available Options

- Fax Function Upgrade Unit (Fax Function Upgrade Type 185)
- Expansion Memory (32MB: DIMM)
- ISDN Unit (ISDN Option Type 270)
- Extra G3 Interface Unit (G3 Interface Unit Type 270)
- Handset (Handset Type 100)

Supplies

• Marker Ink (Marker Type 30)

NOTICE

A CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Shielded interconnect cables must be employed with this equipment to ensure compliance with the pertinent RF emission limits governing this device.

Direct (or indirect) reflected eye contact with the laser beam may cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

🖉 Note

- □ Some illustrations may be slightly different from your machine.
- Certain options may not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

.

Notice about the Telephone Consumer Protection Act (Valid in USA only).

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 among other things makes it unlawful for any person to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business, other entity, or other individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity or individual. This information is transmitted with your document by the TTI (Transmit Terminal Identification) feature. The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long distance transmission charges. In order for you to meet the requirement, your machine must be programmed by following the instructions in the accompanying Operation Manual. In particular, please refer to the chapter of Installation. Also refer to the TTI (Transmit Terminal Identification) programming procedure to enter the business identification and telephone number of the terminal or business. Do not forget to set the date and time.

Thank you.

VENERGY SAVING INFORMATION

As an Energy Star Partner, we have determined that this fax model meets Energy Star guidelines for energy efficiency. This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with fax equipment. This is accomplished by means of energy saving features such as Low Power mode. Please see applicable sections of operating instructions for details.



Note to users in the United States of America

Votice:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

.

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio /TV technician for help.

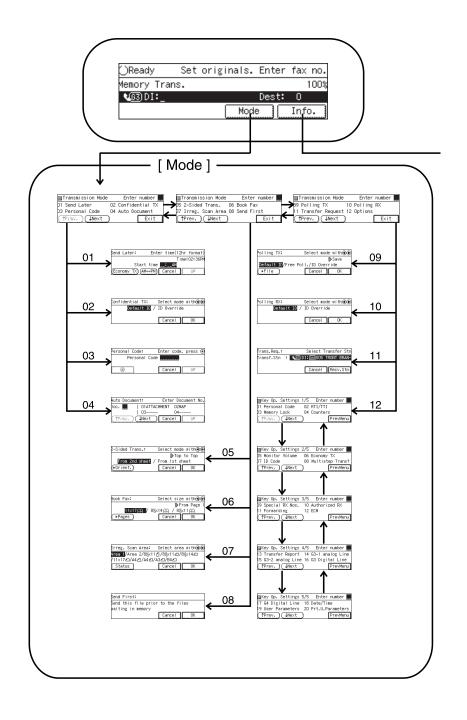
•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••••••••
		• • • • • • • • • •		••••••

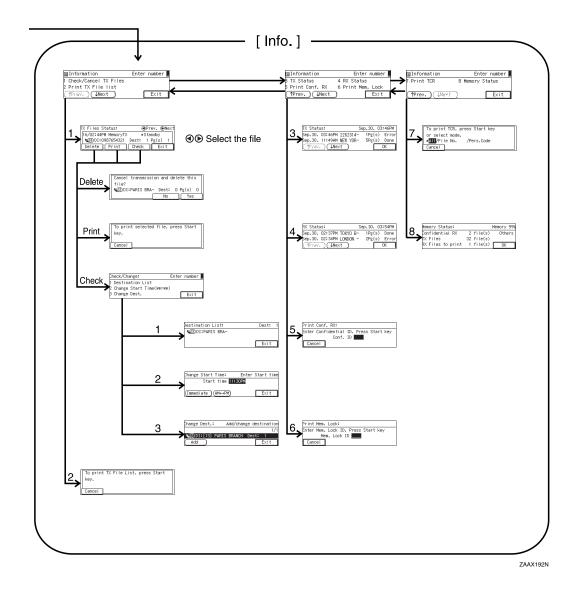
• Varning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

 This page is intentionally blank.

FUNCTION MAP





V

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Getting Started

GUIDE TO COMPONENTS Front View	
Rear View	. 3
OPERATION PANEL	. 4
STARTING THE MACHINE	. 7
Turning On The Power	
Turning Off The Power	
SWITCHING BETWEEN COPY MODE AND FACSIMILE MODE	. 9
READING THE DISPLAY	10
Reading the Display Panel and Using Keys	
Standby Display	
Communication Display Display Prompts	
USEFUL FUNCTIONS	
Auto Fax Reception Power-up	
Dual Access	
Personal Code Access	
Checking Settings (Check Modes)	13
Transmission with Image Rotation	
Simultaneous Broadcast	
ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF ORIGINALS Acceptable Original Sizes	
Original Sizes Difficult to Detect	
Paper Size and Scanned Area	16
HOW TO SET AN ORIGINAL	
Setting a Single Original on the Exposure Glass	-
Setting Originals in the Document Feeder (ARDF)	21
WHERE INCOMING MESSAGE ARE DELIVERED—OUTPUT TRAY	22
When the Selected Output Tray Becomes Full	22
When the Finisher Unit is Installed	22
Tray Shift	22

2. Sending a Fax Message

OVERVIEW	23
Overview	23
MEMORY TRANSMISSION	24
Memory Storage Report	28
Transmission Result Report (Memory Transmission)	
Communication Failure Report	29

CANCELING A MEMORY TRANSMISSION Canceling the Transmission Before the Original is Scanned In Canceling a Transmission While the Original is Being Scanned In Canceling a Transmission While the Message is Being Sent	30
IMMEDIATE TRANSMISSION. Transmission Result Report (Immediate Transmission) On-hook Dial Manual Dial	34
CANCELING AN IMMEDIATE TRANSMISSION Canceling a Transmission Before You Have Pressed Start Canceling a Transmission After You Have Pressed the Start Key	36
SCAN SETTINGS Resolution Original Type Image Density (Contrast) Mixing Scan Settings in a Multiple Page Original.	37 38 38 39
CHANGING THE LINE TYPE	41
DIALING	43
	43 45 45 46 47 47 48 50
DIALING Number Keys Pause Tone Subaddress Chain Dial Quick Dials Speed Dials Groups	43 45 45 46 47 47 48 50 51

3. Receiving a Fax Message

IMMEDIATE RECEPTION	55
MEMORY RECEPTION	56
Substitute Reception	57
Screening Out Messages from Anonymous Senders	
SELECTING THE RECEPTION MODE	59
Facsimile Mode (Auto Reception Mode)	59
Telephone Mode	59
RECEPTION FUNCTIONS	60
Transfer Station	

Transfer Result Report ID Reception (Closed Network) F Code (SEP) F Code (PWD) JBIG Reception	. 61 . 61 . 63
PRINTING FUNCTIONS	64
Print Completion Beep	
Chequered Mark	. 64
Center Mark	. 64
Reception Time	. 64
Multi-copy Reception	
2-Sided Printing	. 65
180 Degree Rotation Printing	
Image Rotation	
Combine 2 originals	
Page Separation and Length Reduction (not available in some countries)	
Reverse Order Printing	
Page Reduction	
TSI Print	69
CIL/TID Print	
When There is No Paper of the Correct Size	
Having Incoming Messages Printed on Paper From the Bypass Tray	. 72

4. Advanced Transmission Features

OVERVIEW	73
Overview	73
SEND LATER	74
CONFIDENTIAL TRANSMISSION	76
PERSONAL CODE TRANSMISSION	78
SENDING AN AUTO DOCUMENT	79
2-SIDED TRANSMISSION (DOUBLE-SIDED TRANSMISSION)	81
BOOK FAX	83
CHOOSING THE AREA TO BE SCANNED YOURSELF	
(IRREGULAR SCAN AREA)	85
SEND FIRST	87
POLLING TRANSMISSION	88
Polling Transmission Clear Report	
POLLING RECEPTION	91
Polling Reserve Report	
Polling Result Report	92
TRANSFER REQUEST	
Specifying an End Receiver	
TRANSMISSION OPTIONS	96
Selecting Transmission Options for a Single Transmission	98

5. Communication Information

CHECKING AND CANCELING TRANSMISSION FILES Canceling a Transmission	
Printing a File Checking and Editing a File	102
PRINTING A LIST OF FILES IN MEMORY (PRINT TX FILE LIST)	
CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION RESULT (TX FILE STATUS)	107
CHECKING THE RECEPTION RESULT (RX FILE STATUS)	108
PRINTING A CONFIDENTIAL MESSAGE	109
Confidential File Report	110
PRINTING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMORY LOCK	111
PRINTING THE TCR	113
DISPLAYING THE MEMORY STATUS	114

6. Troubleshooting

WHEN TONER RUNS OUT	115
ERROR MESSAGES AND THEIR MEANINGS	116
SOLVING PROBLEMS	117
INDICATORS	119
When the Receive File Indicator is Lit	119
When (the Confidential File Indicator) is Lit or Blinking	119
When the Facsimile Error Indicator is Lit in Red	120
WHEN AN ERROR REPORT IS PRINTED	121
WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS	122

7. Facsimile User Tools

ACCESSING THE USER TOOLS	
Exiting User Tool mode 1 REGISTER/DELETE MENU	
Registering Quick Dials	125 127
Quick Dial Key and Function Key Label (Dial label)	128
Registering Groups Registering End Receivers for Multi-step Transfer	
Deleting Groups	137
Registering Speed Dials	141
Storing Keystroke Programs Deleting a Keystroke Program	
Registering an Auto Document	147
Deleting an Auto Document	149

Printing an Auto Document Registering An Irregular Area Deleting an Irregular Area	151
REPORTS/LISTS	154
INITIAL SETUP TX	156
INITIAL SETUP RX	158
To Set the Bypass Paper Size	160
ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS	161
Storing/Editing the Contents of a User Function Key	
Using a User Function Key	
Functions You Can Store In User Function Keys	163
KEY OPERATOR SETTINGS	164
Personal Codes	164
RTI/TTI	169
Memory Lock	
Counters	
Monitor Volume	
Registering The Economy Transmission Time	175
ID Code	
Multistep Transfer	
Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)	
Authorized Reception	
Forwarding	
ЕСМ	
Transfer Report	
G3 Analog Line	
G3 Digital Line	
G4 Digital Line	
Date/Time	
Changing the User Parameters	
Summer Time	
Fax Auto Reset	
Paper Feed Selection	
RDS (Remote Diagnostic System)	213

8. Entering Text

ENTERING AND MODIFYING TEXT	. 215
Available Characters	. 215
Keys	. 215
How To Enter Text	. 216

9. Maintaining Your Machine

CONNECTING THE MACHINE TO A TELEPHONE LINE AND TELEPHONE	219
Connecting the Telephone Line	219
Connecting the Machine to the ISDN	

REPLACING THE STAMP CARTRIDGE	222
Selecting the Line Type	
Connecting the Optional External Telephone	220

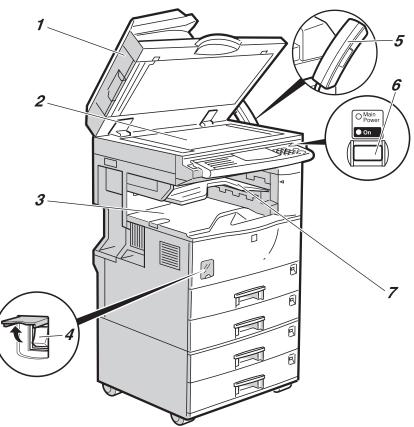
10.Appendix

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT Expansion Memory (32MB: DIMM) Fax Function Upgrade Unit ISDN Unit (ISDN Option Type 270) Extra G3 Interface Unit (G3 Interface Unit Type 270) Duplex Unit (AD360) PC-Fax Expander (PC-Fax Expander Type 185)	223 224 224 224
SPECIFICATIONS	225
FUNCTION LIST	226
Advanced Transmission Features Communication Information User Tools	226 228
INDEX	233

1. Getting Started

GUIDE TO COMPONENTS

Front View



ZAAH100N

1. Document Feeder (ARDF)/Platen Cover

Holds a document stack of up to 50 sheets which are fed automatically one at a time. Place documents face up here.

2. Exposure Glass

Place the original face down aligning its upper left corner with the reference mark at the upper left corner of the exposure glass. Close the platen cover when you set a document on the exposure glass.

3. Internal Tray

By default received fax messages are delivered here. Other trays can be selected for prints or copies.

See "Changing the Machine's Settings" in the System Settings manual.

4. Main Power Switch

Do not touch this switch. This switch should be only used by a service representative.

🖉 Note

- □ If the Operation switch is on and there is still no power, turn on the Main **Power** switch.
- □ If you leave the **Main Power** switch off for more than about an hour, all files in memory are lost.

5. Optional Handset

This permits voice communication.

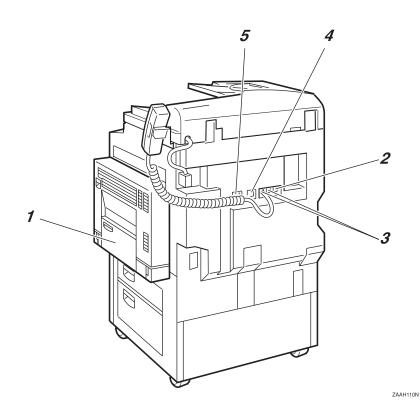
6. Operation Switch

Press this switch to turn the power on (the **On** indicator lights up). To turn the power off, press this switch again (the **On** indicator goes off). \Rightarrow P.7 "*Turning On The Power*", P.12 "*Auto Fax Reception Power*up", P.122 "WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"

7. Internal Tray 2 (option)

You can chose to have prints or copies delivered here.

Rear View



1. Bypass Tray

Select this tray for non-standard size paper.

See P.19 *"HOW TO SET AN ORIGINAL"* in the Copy Reference manual.

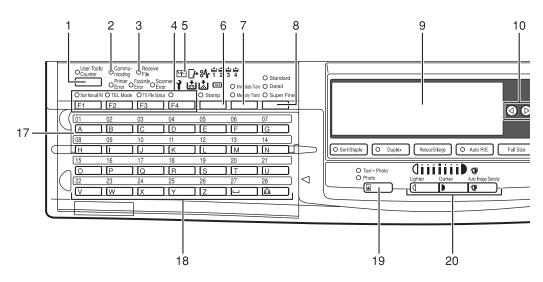
2. Analog Line Connector

3. Optional Handset/External Telephone Connector

4. Optional extra G3 Interface Unit Connector

5. ISDN Line Connector \Rightarrow P.220 "Connecting the Machine to the IS-DN"

OPERATION PANEL



1. [User Tools/Counter] key

Press to enter User Tools mode. These tools allow you to customize the default settings.

2. Communicating Indicator

Lights during transmission or reception.

3. Receive File Indicator

Lights to tell you a message has been received into memory.

Note that this indicator does not inform you of a Confidential reception.

4. User Function keys

Each of these can be programmed for rapid access to frequently used features.

Features Programmed by Default

Key	Standard	With the ISDN Unit or Extra G3 Unit options
F1	Start Manual RX	\leftarrow
F2	TEL Mode	\leftarrow
F3	Transmission Result Display	\leftarrow
F4	-	Line Selection

5. Confidential File Indicator

Blinks when a Memory Lock file has been stored in memory.

Lights when a message has been received into memory with Confidential Reception. \Rightarrow P.109 "*PRINTING A CONFIDEN-TIAL MESSAGE*"

6. Stamp key

Press this key before sending a fax to have a mark stamped on the scanned document.

7. Transmission Mode key

Press the key to toggle between Memory Transmission (**Memory Trans.**) and Immediate Transmission (**Immediate Trans.**) modes.

8. Resolution key

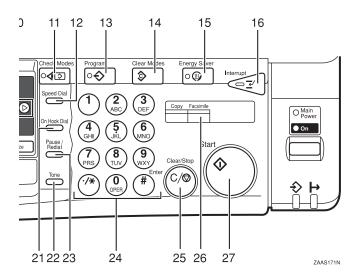
Press to switch between **Standard**, **Detail** and **Super Fine** (optional Expansion Memory required).

9. LCD display

This guides you through tasks and informs you of the machine status. Messages appear here.

10. 🕘 🕞 keys

Press to move the cursor or select functions



11. [Check Modes] key

Press this key before pressing the **[Start]** key to check the settings selected for the fax about to be sent.

12. [Speed Dial] key

Press to select a Speed Dial.

13. [Program] key

This key is used in Copy operation mode.

14. [Clear Modes] key

Cancels the current settings and returns the machine to standby mode.

15. [Energy Saver] key

Hold down for more than a second to enter Energy Saver mode.

16. [Interrupt] key

Interrupts the current fax operation to start copying.

17. Quick Dial Flip Plate

Flip this plate down to access Quick Dial keys 01 through 28, flip up to access keys 29 through 56.

18. Quick Dial keys

Use to dial numbers at a single touch or to enter letters and symbols. Also use for the Group Dial, Keystroke Program features.

19. [Original Type] key

Use when sending a halftone image such as a photograph or a color original.

20. [Lighter] and [Darker] keys and [Auto Image Density]key

Press this key to adjust the image density of the scanned image.

21. [On Hook Dial] key

Use to dial a number from the numeric keypad without having to lift the hand-set.

22. [Tone] key

Press to send tonal signals down a pulse dialing line.

23. [Pause/Redial] key

Pause:

Inserts a pause when you are dialing or storing a fax number. A pause cannot be inserted as the first digit.

Redial:

Press to redial one of the last ten numbers.

24. Number keys

Use to dial fax numbers or enter the number of copies.

Clear:

Deletes one character or digit.

Stop:

Interrupts the current operation (transmission, scanning, copying or printing).

26. [Facsimile] key

Press to switch to Facsimile mode.

27. [Start] key

Press to start all tasks.

STARTING THE MACHINE

To start the machine, turn on the operation switch.

🖉 Note

This machine automatically enters Energy Saver mode or turns itself off if you do not use the machine for a while. See "08. Energy Saver Timer", "09. Auto Off Timer" in the System Settings manual.

This machine has two power switches: See P.1 *"GUIDE TO COMPO-NENTS"*

Operation switch

Turn on this switch to activate the machine. When the machine has warmed up, you can make copies or send faxes.

Main power switch

Do not touch the **Main Power** switch. It should be used only by a service representative when the optional fax unit is installed.

∰Important

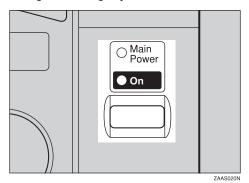
If you leave the Main Power switch off for more than one hour, all fax files in memory are lost. See "Turning Off The Power" below.

Turning On The Power

1 Make sure that the power cord is plugged into the wall outlet firmly and the Main Power switch is on.

2 Turn on the operation switch. The On indicator should light.

The panel display will turn on.



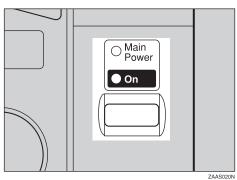
⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax r	10.
Memory Tran	ns.			10)0%
163 DI :			Dest:	0	
		Mode	e [Info.	

🖉 Note

□ If nothing happens when you turn on the operation switch, make sure the **Main Power** switch is turned on.

Turning Off The Power

1 Turn off the operation switch. The On indicator will go out.

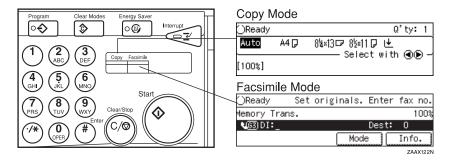


∰Important

- Before you unplug the power cord, make sure that the display in Facsimile mode indicates that the remaining memory space is 100%.
- □ Fax files stored in memory will be lost an hour after you turn the Main Power switch off or you unplug the power cord. ⇒ P.122 "WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"

SWITCHING BETWEEN COPY MODE AND FACSIMILE MODE

You can use this machine both as a fax machine and a copier. Ordinarily when you turn on the power switch, the copier screen is shown and you are ready to make copies. When you wish to use fax functions, press the **[Facsimile]** key on the right of the operation panel.



Limitation

□ You cannot switch modes under the following circumstances:

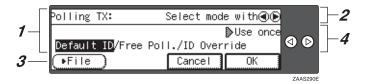
- While scanning in a fax
- During Immediate Transmission
- While editing the System Settings
- During Interrupt Copying
- While using On-hook Dial

READING THE DISPLAY

The display tells you the machine status and guides you through operations.

- 🖉 Note
- □ Functions that have been selected are hilighted (e.g. <u>11×17</u>). Keys that you can not select are shown with a dashed outline (e.g. <u>12×17</u>).
- All procedures in this manual assume you are in Facsimile mode. By default, when you turn the machine on it is in Copy mode. Press the [Facsimile] key change to Facsimile mode. You can have the machine start in Facsimile mode. See "Changing the Machine's Settings" in the System Settings manual.

Reading the Display Panel and Using Keys



- **1.** Display for the currently selected function.
- 2. Machine status and messages.
- 3. Press these keys to navigate menu screens and confirm or cancel selections.

4. Press to select an item from a selection. The currently selected item is hilighted.

🖉 Note

- \Box Press () to select the item one place to the left.
- \Box Press O to select the item one place to the right.

Standby Display

While the machine is in standby mode (immediately after it is turned on or after the **[Clear Modes]** key is pressed), the following the display is shown.

Memory Transmission

()Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Memory Trar	ns.				1	100%
63 DI:_			Dest	::	0	
		Mod	e		Info).

Immediate Transmission

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	r fa	ах	no.
Immediate	ΤX				1	00%
163 DI:_			Dest	: ()	
		Mod	e][١I	nfo).]

🖉 Note

- □ To return the machine to standby mode, do one of the following:
 - If you have set an original and are in the sending process, remove the original.
 - If you have not set an original and are in the sending process, press the **[Clear Modes]** key.
 - If you are in User Tools mode, press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

Communication Display

While the machine is communicating the status is displayed.

Display during Memory Transmission or Memory Reception:

PARIS BRANC	Н		A4->A	4 P.	.002	
⊖Ready	Set	original	s. En	ter	fax	no.
163 DI			De	st:	0	
		M	ode][Info).

🖉 Note

□ Even when the machine is sending or receiving a fax message from/ into memory, you can still scan the next original into memory. ⇒ P.12 "Dual Access"

Immediate Transmission:

Transmitting	Page O
	Memory100%
(<u>631</u>)DI:217	
*Press Stop key	to cancel TX

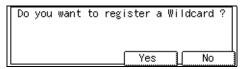
Display Prompts

Depending on the situation, the machine will show various prompts on the display.

Instructions and Requests

Send Later:	Enter	time(12hr	format)
		Time	:02:36PM
Start	time 📃	:AM	
(Economy TX) (AM-	⊖PM) [(Cancel	ÚK 🛛

Questions



Selections

Book Fax:	Select size	:with 👁 🕞
		om Page 1
<u>11×17ጪ</u>	′8½× <u>14 ဣ /[¯]8½</u>	:11 <u>M</u>
●Pages)	Cancel	OK

Status

Dialling	Page	0
	Memory1	00%
(631)DI: [56] PARIS OFFICE		
*Press Stop key to cance	I TX	

USEFUL FUNCTIONS

Auto Fax Reception Power-up

This machine can be set to shut down automatically if nobody has used the it for a while. In these situations, even through the operation switch is off, the machine can still receive incoming messages as long as the **Main Power** switch is on.

∰Important

 Reception is not possible if both the operation switch and Main Power switch are turned off.

🖉 Note

By default, messages are printed as soon as they are received (Immediate Reception). To change this, see P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Dual Access

The machine can scan other messages into memory even while sending a fax message from memory, receiving a message into memory, or automatically printing a report. Since the machine starts sending the second message immediately after the current transmission terminates, the line will be used efficiently.

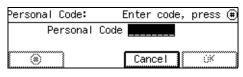
Note that during Immediate Transmission or when in User Tools mode, the machine cannot scan an original.

Personal Code Access

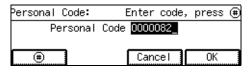
The machine can be set up so that nobody can use it without entering a personal code. This prevents unauthorized people from sending fax messages and can be used to track fax machine use by giving a personal code to each user.

🖉 Note

- □ You can store up to 20 personal codes (up to 50 with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
- □ Register personal codes and turn Personal Code Access on. The default setting is off. ⇒ P.164 "Registering Personal Codes", P.167 "Personal Code Access"
- Even if Restricted Access is enabled, the machine can receive and print a fax message.
- **1** If Personal Code Access is turned on, the following display appears:



2 Enter a personal code (8 digit number) using the number keys, and press (♣).



🖉 Note

□ If a user enters a personal code that is not registered, the machine returns to step **1**.

Checking Settings (Check Modes)

Follow the steps below to view the destinations and functions selected so far.

Press the [Check Modes] key.

Check Modes	Program	Clear Modes	s Energy Saver	
	ि€		ര	Interrupt
				-6
Spood Dial				/
				ZAAS101N

2 When you have finished checking the settings, press the [Check Modes] key to return to the previous display.

∭Check Modes		Dest:	O
Send Later 11:30PM 2-Sided Trans.	Conf.TX:	Default ID	
e oraca rrans.		Exit	

Transmission with Image Rotation

For most purposes, set $A4/8^1/_2$ "×11" originals in the lengthwise direction (\square). If you set an $A4/8^1/_2$ "×11" original in the sideways direction (\square), the image will be sent rotated by 90°. Providing the receiver has $A4/8^1/_2$ "×11" lengthwise paper (\square), the message will be printed the same size as the original.

Limitation

- This feature is not available with Parallel Memory Transmission or Immediate Transmission.
- When Image Rotation is used, all messages are sent by normal Memory Transmission.

Simultaneous Broadcast

The optional ISDN Unit or optional extra G3 Interface Unit is required.

The Standard Broadcast feature sends faxes one at a time to multiple destinations in the order that you specified the destination numbers.

The Simultaneous Broadcast feature, however, can send faxes two at a time to multiple destinations by transmitting simultaneously over different lines.

This results in a shorter overall transmission time.

🖉 Note

- □ This feature can use a maximum of 2 lines simultaneously.
- When using the optional extra G3 Interface Unit, if you set the line selection to "G3 Auto Select" beforehand, the machine will use whichever G3 line is not busy thereby increasing efficiency.

Multi-port

When the optional ISDN Unit or optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, communications can take place simultaneously through two lines at once.

Option	Available Line Types	Available Pro- tocol Combina- tions	
Without option	PSTN	G3	
Extra G3 Interface Unit	PSTN+PS TN	G3+G3	
ISDN Unit	PSTN+IS- DN	G3+G4	
		or	
		G3 (ISDN)+G4	
	ISDN	G3 (ISDN)+G4	
Extra G3	PSTN+PS	G3+G3	
Interface Unit+IS- DN Unit	TN+ISDN	or	
		G3+G4	
	PSTN+IS-	G3+G4	
	DN	or	
		G3 (ISDN)+G3	
		or	
		G3 (ISDN)+G4	

- 🖉 Note
- □ A maximum of 2 communications can take place simultaneously.
- □ You cannot perform 2 Immediate Transmissions simultaneously.
- If two fax messages are received simultaneously, they cannot be printed out at the same time.
- □ If two communications are in progress, the display indicates the first communication that was initiated.

You can choose to have messages received on a specified line printed using paper from optional Internal Tray 2. See the System Settings manual for details.

14

ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF ORIGINALS

Make sure your originals are completely dry before setting them in the machine. Originals containing wet ink or correcting fluid will mark the exposure glass and resulting image will be affected.

Where Original is Set	Acceptable Original Size	Maximum Number of Sheets	Paper Thickness
Exposure glass	Maximum A3 (297×420mm), 11"×17" (279×432mm)	1	
Document Feeder (ARDF), single-sid- ed document	Fax transmission: A5 \square to A3 \square (up to 1,200mm long) 8"×5 ¹ / ₂ " \square to 11"×17" \square	50 sheets (80g/m ² , 20lb)	40–128g/m ² (35– 110kg, 11-34lb)
Document Feeder (ARDF), double- sided document	Fax transmission: A5 \square to A3 \square (up to 432mm long) 8"×5 ¹ / ₂ " \square to 11"×17" \square	50 sheets (80g/m ² , 20lb)	52–105g/m ² (45– 90kg, 14–28lb)

Acceptable Original Sizes

Originals Unsuitable for the Document Feeder (ARDF)

Do not set the following types of originals in the Document Feeder (ARDF) because they may be damaged. Place them on the exposure glass instead.

- Originals of sizes other than those specified in the previous table
- Originals containing staples or clips
- Perforated or torn originals
- Curled, folded, or creased originals
- Pasted originals
- Originals with any kind of coating, such as thermosensitive paper, art paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or conductive paper
- Originals with index tabs, tags, or other projecting parts
- Sticky originals, such as translucent paper
- Thin and soft originals
- Originals of inappropriate weight (see table above)
- Originals in bound form, such as books
- Transparent originals, such as OHP transparencies or translucent paper

Original Sizes Difficult to Detect

The machine finds it difficult to detect the size of the following kinds of originals. If this happens, the receiving machine may not select print paper of the correct size. \Rightarrow P.18 "*If the Machine Cannot Detect the Size of Your Original*"

- Documents set on the exposure glass of sizes other than those listed in the table below
- Originals with index tabs, tags, or projecting parts
- Transparent originals, such as OHP transparencies or translucent paper
- Dark originals with many characters or drawings
- Originals which partially contain solid printing
- Originals which have solid printing at their edges

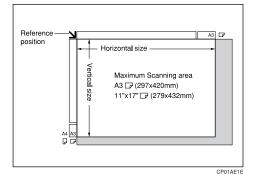
The following paper sizes are automatically detected in Facsimile mode.

Inch Version

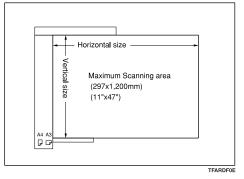
Paper Size Where Original is Set	11"×17" ₽	8 ¹ / ₂ "× 14" D	8 ¹ /₂"× 11" ₽₽	5 ¹ / ₂ "× 8 ¹ ₂ " D	10"×14"	8 ¹ / ₂ "× 13" D	8"×10" D
Exposure Glass	0	0	0	×	0	0	0
Document Feeder (ARDF)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Paper Size and Scanned Area

Exposure glass



Document Feeder (ARDF)



Limitation

- There may be a difference in the size of the image when it is printed at the destination.
- □ If you set an original larger than 11"×17"/A3 on the exposure glass, only the 11"×17"/A3 area is scanned.

🖉 Note

- Even if an original is correctly placed on the exposure glass or in the Document Feeder (ARDF), a margin of 3mm around each edge of the original may not be sent.
- □ If the receiver uses paper narrower than the original, the image will be reduced to fit the paper width. \Rightarrow P.97 "*Auto Reduction*"
- **The machine detects paper sizes in the following ways.**
 - When you set an original in the Document Feeder (ARDF), an original wider than about 10.4" (263mm) is scanned as 11"×17" size.
 An original narrower than about 9.1" (230mm) will be sent as 8¹/₂"×11" or 8¹/₂"×14" size.

Originals up to 47" (1,200mm) in length can be scanned.

 Refer to the table below for the sizes the machine can detect when you set an original on the exposure glass. Because the machine scans in non-standard size documents as one of the standard sizes, parts of the image may be truncated depending on the length of the document. For how to set nonstandard size documents, see ⇒ P.85 "CHOOSING THE AREA TO BE SCANNED YOURSELF (IRREGULAR SCAN AREA)".

	Length			
Width		~12.5"	12.5"~13.5"	13.5"~
	~9.6"	8 ¹ / ₂ "×11"□	8 ¹ / ₂ "×13"□	8 ¹ / ₂ "×14"□
	9.6"~10.6"	8"×10" 🔽	not detected	10"×14"□
	10.6"~	8 ¹ / ₂ "×11"	not detected	11"×17"□

```
Waximum Scan Area
Memory Transmission/Immediate Transmission
```

- From the Document Feeder (ARDF): 11"×47"/297×1,200mm (W×L)
- From the exposure glass: 11"×17"/297×432mm (W×L)

If the Machine Cannot Detect the Size of Your Original

If the machine cannot detect the original size, the following display is shown:

```
Cannot detect original size. Reset
original(s) and press Start key.
Exit
```

If this happens, carry out the following steps.

Press [Exit].

2 Remove the original and replace it on the exposure glass.

E Press the [Start] key to scan the original again.

If the above display appears again, repeat step **1** to **3**.

🖉 Note

□ If the machine still cannot detect the original size, the following display is shown: If this happens, carry out the following steps.

```
Cannot detect original size. Select
size with④⑥ and press Start key.
•8%x1111/8%x11ㅁ/8%x14ㅁ /11x17ㅁ
```

- Press the ④ or ⑤ key to switch the scan size.
- Press the **[Start]** key again.

HOW TO SET AN ORIGINAL

In this manual an original can mean a single or multiple page document. You can set your originals either in the Document Feeder (ARDF) or on the exposure glass. Some types of originals are unsuitable for the Document Feeder (ARDF) so they must be set on the exposure glass. \Rightarrow P.15 "ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF ORIGI-NALS"

Which way you place your original depends on its size and whether you are using the Document Feeder (AR-DF) or the exposure glass.

Limitation

□ If you set 5¹/₂"×8¹/₂"/A5 size documents on the exposure glass, they will not be detected. Set 5¹/₂"× 8¹/₂"/A5 size documents in the ARDF.

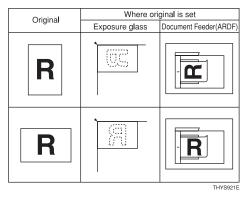
🖉 Note

- □ When sending a fax, the image output at the other end depends on the size and direction of paper used in the receiver's terminal. If the receiver does not use paper of the same size and direction as that of the original, the fax image may be output reduced, trimmed at the both edges, or divided into two or more sheets. When sending an important original, we recommend you to ask the receiver about the size and direction of the paper used in their terminal.
- □ When sending an original of an irregular (i.e. non-standard) size or part of a large original, you can specify the scan area precisely. ⇒ P.85 "CHOOSING THE AREA TO BE SCANNED YOURSELF (IRREGULAR SCAN AREA)"

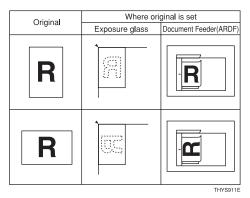
- You can scan non-standard sized documents as standard sized documents with the Irregular Scan Area feature. When you turn on this feature, the area scanned will be in the specified range regardless of the actual document size. A blank margin will appear or the image will be truncated at the receiving end.
- Make sure that all ink, correcting fluid etc., has completely dried before setting your original. If it is still wet, the exposure glass will be marked and those marks will appear on the received image.
- □ If you set an 8¹/₂"×11"/A4 size original in the sideways direction, the machine rotates the image by 90 degrees before sending it. ⇒ P.13 "Transmission with Image Rotation"

For how to set 2-sided documents, see P.83 "BOOK FAX".

How to set A4, B4, A3, 8¹/₂"×11", 8¹/₂"×14" and 11"×17" size originals



How to set A5, 5¹/₂"×8¹/₂" and B5 size originals



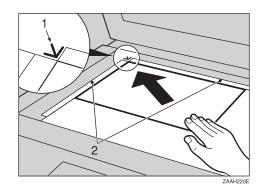
Limitation

□ $5^{1}/_{2}$ "× $8^{1}/_{2}$ "/A5 size on the exposure glass is not detected. Set $5^{1}/_{2}$ "× $8^{1}/_{2}$ "/A5 size documents in the ARDF.

Setting a Single Original on the Exposure Glass

.

Set originals that cannot be placed in the Document Feeder (ARDF), such as a book, on the exposure glass one page at a time. Lift the Document Feeder (ARDF) by at least 30 degrees. Place the original face down and align its upper left corner with the reference mark at the upper left corner of the exposure glass.



- 1. Reference mark
- 2. Scale

🖉 Note

If you do not raise the Document Feeder (ARDF) by at least 30 degrees, the original size will not be detected.

2 Close the Document Feeder (ARDF).

🖉 Note

When sending a bound original, the received image may contain some black areas. To reduce this effect, hold down the original to prevent its bound part from rising.

🖓 Bound Original Page Order

When sending bound originals (books, magazines, etc.), you can choose to have either the left page or right page sent first.

🖉 Note

□ The default setting is Send Left Page first. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

.

Setting Originals in the Document Feeder (ARDF)

Use the Document Feeder (ARDF) to scan in a stack of originals in one operation. The Document Feeder (AR-DF) can handle both single-sided and double-sided originals.

Limitation

- □ The maximum document length is 47" (1,200mm).
- Place all the originals to be sent in a single stack.
- □ You cannot set originals in the Document Feeder (ARDF) one page at a time or in sheaves.
- Do not open the Document Feeder (ARDF) while it is scanning the originals or your document could be jammed.

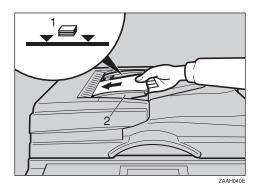
🖉 Note

- If you send documents longer than 47" (1,200mm), select Long Document mode with the User Parameters. If a jam occurs, the document might be damaged because scanning will not stop.
- If an original jams, press the [Clear/ Stop] key then remove the original carefully.
- □ If your original is bent or folded, flatten it before you set it.
- □ Set thin originals on the exposure glass.

✓ Reference

For information about the sizes and number of originals that can be placed in the Document Feeder (ARDF), see P.15 "ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF ORIGINALS".

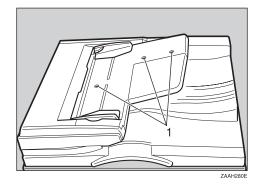
1 Adjust the document guide to match the size of your originals. Align the edges of your originals and stack them in the Document Feeder (ARDF) face up.



- **1.** Limit mark
- 2. Document guide

∰Important

To avoid documents being incorrectly detected by the sensors (1 in the diagram below), do not place any foreign objects on the document feeder or cover it with your hand.



1

WHERE INCOMING MESSAGE ARE DELIVERED—OUTPUT TRAY

To change where incoming messages are delivered, adjust the Output Tray setting in the System Settings.

When the Selected Output Tray Becomes Full

If you install the optional Finisher Unit, the machine automatically detects when the selected Output Tray becomes full. When this happens, a warning will appear on the display and the message will be received using Substitute Reception.

When the Finisher Unit is Installed

You can use the optional Finisher Unit for large capacity paper delivery and sort delivery.

Limitation

□ If you have selected the optional Finisher Unit as the Output Tray and a copy document longer than 13.3" (340mm) is left in the Finisher Unit, incoming messages are automatically delivered to the Internal Tray.

🖉 Note

If you receive messages larger than 12.9" (330mm) on a regular basis, we recommend that you choose an Output Tray setting other than Internal Tray.

Tray Shift

The optional Finisher Unit is Required.

When the optional Finisher Unit is selected for fax output, you can use the Tray Shift function to have the internal delivery exit move to the left or right whenever a fax or report is printed.

This is useful for separating faxes stacked in the finisher output tray, e.g. if the previous incoming fax was output to the left, the next incoming fax will be output to the right and vice-versa.

🖉 Note

□ You can turn this feature on or off with the User Parameters. When the machine is shipped, this feature is turned on by default. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

2. Sending a Fax Message

OVERVIEW

Overview

The basic procedure to send a fax message is:

- Make sure the Facsimile indicator is lit
- Set your original
- ③ Dial the number
- ④ Press the [Start] key

The rest of this section describes these steps and the various features that are available in more detail.

There are two ways to send a fax message:

- Memory Transmission
- Immediate Transmission

Check the indicators on the operation panel to check which mode is currently active and press the Transmission Mode key to toggle between them.

MEMORY TRANSMISSION

In Memory Transmission mode, after you press the **[Start]** key, the machine doesn't dial the destination until all pages of your fax message have scanned into memory (in contrast with Immediate Transmission, where the number is dialed first and pages are scanned and sent one by one).

Memory Transmission is useful because:

- You can take your original away from the machine without having to wait too long
- While your message is being sent, other people can operate the machine
- You can send the same message to more than one place in a single operation (Broadcasting)

∰Important

□ If there is a power failure (**Main Power** switch is off) or the plug is pulled out for more than 1 hour, all the files stored in memory are deleted. As soon as power is restored, the Power Failure Report is printed to help you identify deleted files. If you turn just the operation switch off, files are not deleted. ⇒ P.122 *"WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"*

Limitation

□ If memory is full (0% appears on the display), Memory Transmission is disabled. Use Immediate Transmission instead.

🖉 Note

Maximum number of Memory Transmission files: 200 (up to 1,000 files with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed)

- Maximum number of destinations per Memory Transmission: 256 (up to 500 destinations with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed)
- Combined total number of destinations that can be stored: 300 (up to 2,000 destinations with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed)
- □ The theoretical maximum number of destinations you can enter with the number keys is 100, but this will depend on the amount of memory currently available (1,000 destinations with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
- The number of pages that you can store in memory depends on the original images and the scan settings. You can store up to 160 standard pages (ITU-T #1 chart, Resolution: Standard, photo mode: OFF).
- □ As default, the machine will return to the default transmission mode (Memory Transmission) after every transmission. You can change this so that the current mode is maintained. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ The maximum total number of documents that can be stored in memory is as follows:
 - About 400 pages with only the optional Expansion Memory installed
 - About 2,400 pages with both the optional Expansion Memory and Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed

1 Make sure that the Memory Transmission indicator is lit.

	Obser Tools/ Octuber Commun- Primer Permiter Permiter Permiter Permiter Permiter Permiter Permiter Permiter	
--	---	--

If it isn't, press the **[Transmission Mode]** key.

2 Set the original.

Limitation

- □ You can send the first pages from the exposure glass then the remaining pages from the Document Feeder (ARDF). After you place the last page on the exposure glass, you have 60 seconds to insert the remaining pages in the Document Feeder (ARDF).
- Note that you cannot set pages on the exposure glass after you have started using the Document Feeder (ARDF).
- Do not open the Document Feeder (ARDF) while it is scanning in originals.

🖉 Note

- Place the original you want to store in memory on the exposure glass or the Document Feeder (ARDF). To store multiple page originals from the exposure glass, set them page by page.
- You can scan half the pages of your original from the exposure glass and the remainder from the Document Feeder (ARDF). When you have finished scanning from the exposure glass, place the rest of the pages in the Document Feeder (ARDF) and press the [Start] key.

The original can be placed at any time up until you press the [Start] key.

P Reference

P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGI-NAL"

- 3 Select any scan settings you require. ⇒ P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"
- Dial. If you wish to send the same message to more than one destination, press [Add] and dial another destination. Repeat this step for all destinations.

()Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Tr						100%
VG3 DI: 1	2345678	3S_		Dest	t:	1
Add)	[Mo	ode		Info.

If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number again.

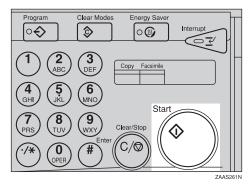
🖉 Note

- When specifying a destination using a Quick Dial, Speed Dial or Group dial, the destination is added even if you did not press [Add].
- □ When dialing with the number keys or using Chain Dial (P.47 "Chain Dial"), you can select the line type (G3 or G4) before pressing [Add] in step 2.
- □ If you do not set an original within 30 seconds of entering a destination fax number, the transmission is canceled.

✓ Reference

P.43 "DIALING"

5 Press the **[Start]** key.



The machine starts scanning the original.

The machine calls the destination. The name or fax number which is programmed as the RTI or CSI at the other end is shown on the display.

PARIS BRANC	Н	A4 ·	->A4 P	.002	
()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info).

P Reference

P.169 "RTI/TTI"

After transmission, the machine will return to standby mode.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tr	ans.				100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

Sending Originals from the Exposure Glass

Set the first page of your original on the exposure glass face down.

2 Dial.

• Press the [Start] key.

The machine starts scanning the original.

Set the next original on the exposure glass within 60 seconds after the machine has finished scanning the first original.

🖉 Note

- □ Repeat steps **1** to **4** for all pages.
- Set the last original then press[♥].

6 Press the **[Start]** key.

The machine starts to call the destination.

Checking the Transmission Result

• Turn the Transmission Result Report on if you want a report to be printed after every successful transmission. ⇒ P.24 "MEMORY TRANSMISSION"

If you leave the Transmission Result Report off, the report will not be printed after every transmission. However, should a transmission fail, a Communication Failure Report will be printed instead.

- If you turn the Transmission Result Report (Memory Transmission) off, the Error Report will be printed when the communication on fails.
- You can also check the transmission result by examining the TCR.
 ⇒ P.113 "PRINTING THE TCR"
 You can either print or scroll through the TCR on the display. ⇒
 P.107 "CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION RESULT (TX FILE STATUS)"

.

Sending a Fax Message

To send a fax message immediately, use Immediate Transmission. If you have just set up an original for broadcasting, Immediate Transmission will interrupt the current communication.

If there are files queued in addition to the file being currently sent, your original is not be sent until the queued files have been sent.

Automatic Redial

If a fax message could not be transmitted because the line was busy or an error occurred during transmission, redialing is done 4 times at 5 minutes intervals (these figures vary according to which country you are in).

If redialing fails after four redials, the machine cancels the transmission and prints the Transmission Result Report or Communication Failure Report. \Rightarrow P.29 "Transmission Result Report (Memory Transmission)", P.29 "Communication Failure Report", P.122 "WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"

🖉 Note

Redialing is done only once when the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed.

🖗 Broadcasting Sequence

If you dial several destinations for the same message (Broadcasting) the messages are sent in the order in which they were dialed. If the fax message could not be transmitted, the machine redials that destination after the last destination specified for Broadcasting. For example, if you specify four destinations A through D for broadcasting, and if the lines to destinations A and C are busy, the machine dials the destinations in the following order: A, B, C, D, A, and C. When the optional ISDN Unit or optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, broadcast you can simultaneously on multiple lines.

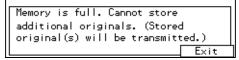
Checking the Transmission Progress

To check which destinations the fax message has been sent to so far, print the TX file list. \Rightarrow P.106 "*PRINTING A LIST OF FILES IN MEMORY (PRINT TX FILE LIST)*"

If Memory Runs Out While Storing an Original

If you run out of memory while storing an original (free space reaches 0%), "Memory full" is displayed.

Press **[Exit]** to transmit the stored pages only.



🖉 Note

By default, successfully scanned pages are sent. If you wish to change this setting, please contact your service representative.

•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

🖗 Batch Transmission

If you send a fax message by Memory Transmission and there is another fax message waiting in memory to be sent to the same destination, that message is sent along with your original. Several fax messages can be sent with a single call, thus eliminating the need for several separate calls. This helps save communication costs and reduce transmission time.

Fax messages for which the transmission time has been set in advance are sent by batch transmission when that time is reached.

🖉 Note

 □ By default Batch Transmission is switched on. You can switch it on or off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

VECM (Error Correction Mode)

This feature automatically resends data that wasn't transmitted successfully using a system that complies with international standards.

ECM requires that the destination machine has the same feature.

🖉 Note

□ By default ECM is switched on. You can change this with the Key Operator Settings. ⇒ P.164 *"KEY* OPERATOR SETTINGS"

.

Memory Storage Report

This report is printed after an original is stored in memory. It helps you review the contents and the destinations of stored originals. Even if the machine is set up not to print this report, it is still printed if an original could not be stored.

🔗 Note

.

- □ You can turn this report on and off. By default it is not printed. \Rightarrow P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ You can choose whether to include part of the original image on the report (part of the image is printed by default). ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Transmission Result Report (Memory Transmission)

This report is printed when a Memory Transmission is completed so you can check the result of the transmission. If two or more destinations are specified, this report is printed after the fax message has been sent to all the destinations. If the machine is set up not to print this report and the fax message could not be successfully transmitted, the Communication Failure Report is printed. \Rightarrow P.29 "Communication Failure Report"

🖉 Note

- □ By default this function is turned on. You can turn it off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ You can choose whether to include part of the original image on the report (by default, part of the image is printed).⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- The "Page" column gives the total number of pages. The "Not Sent" column gives the number of pages that could not be sent successfully.

Communication Failure Report

This report is only printed if the Transmission Result Report is turned off and a message could not be successfully transmitted with Memory Transmission. Use it to keep a record of failed transmissions so you can send them again.

🖉 Note

- □ You can choose whether to include part of the original image on the report (by default, part of the image is printed). ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- The Page column gives the total number of pages. The Not Sent column gives the number of pages that could not be sent successfully.

CANCELING A MEMORY TRANSMISSION

In

Press the [Clear Modes] key.

Canceling the Transmission

Before the Original is Scanned

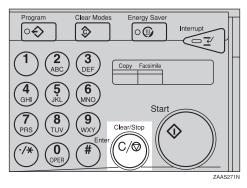


🖉 Note

When you set the document in the Document Feeder (ARDF), you can cancel the transmission by just removing it.

Canceling a Transmission While the Original is Being Scanned In

Press the [Clear/Stop] key.



The machine will stop storing the original and the data will not be sent.

Canceling a Transmission While the Message is Being Sent

Use this procedure to cancel a transmission after the original has been scanned in.

Limitation

□ If transmission finishes while you are carrying out this procedure, it will not be canceled.

🖉 Note

□ If you cancel a message while it is being sent, transmission is halted as soon as you finish this procedure. However, some pages of your message may have already been sent and will be received at the other end.

Press [Info.].

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	r fax	no.
Memory Trar	ns.				99%
163 DI			Dest	: 0	
		Mod	e	Info) .]

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Check/Cancel TX Files" function number with the number keys.

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(TProv.) (UNext)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "Check/Cancel TX Files" is not shown, press [**↑Prev.**] or [↓**N**-**ext**].

3 Press the (a) or (b) key until the file you wish to delete is shown and press [Delete].

TX Files Status:	④Prev. ●Next
16/02:44PM MemoryTX	♦Standby
€63 DI:0987654321	Dest: 1 Pg(s) 1
Delete Print	Check Exit

Press [Yes].

Cancel transmissio	in and d	lelete this	1
file?			Π
€G3DI:PARIS BRA~	Dest:	0 Pg(s) 0	
L L	No	Yes	٦

The file is erased.

5 Press [Exit].

TX Files Status:	④Prev.	€Next
ļ	······	
Delete ∐ Print ∐ C		Exit

🖉 Note

□ To delete another file, repeat steps **E** and **C**.

6 Press [Exit].

()Ready	Set orig	inals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf	o.

IMMEDIATE TRANSMISSION

With Immediate Transmission, when you press the **[Start]** key, the fax number is dialed straight away (i.e. immediately). The message is scanned and transmitted page by page without being stored in memory. This contrasts with Memory Transmission which scans in all pages into memory before dialing the destination.

Immediate Transmission is useful if you want immediate confirmation that the message is being sent to the correct destination (just check the other terminal's RTI or CSI on the operation panel during transmission).

🖉 Note

- You cannot send the same message to multiple destinations (Broadcasting). Use Memory Transmission for this purpose.
- Place the original on the exposure glass or in the Document Feeder (ARDF). To send two or more pages from the exposure glass, set them one page at a time.
- □ You can scan some pages of your original from the exposure glass and the remainder from the Document Feeder (ARDF). When you have finished scanning from the exposure glass, place the remainder of the pages in the Document Feeder (ARDF) and press the **[Start]** key within ten seconds.
- □ By default, the transmission mode selected when the machine is turned on or when modes are cleared (transmission mode home setting) is Memory Transmission. You can change this with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

1 Check that the Immediate Transmission indicator is lit.



If it is not lit, press the **[Transmission Mode]** key.

2 Set your original.

Limitation

□ Do not open the Document Feeder (ARDF) while it is scanning the originals. This can cause originals to jam.

🖉 Note

- □ You can set the original any time up until you press the **[Start]** key.
- ₽ Reference

P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGI-NAL"

E Select any scan settings you require. \Rightarrow P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"

4 Dial.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Immediate	ΤX			100%
📢 🖓 🖓 🕹			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number again.

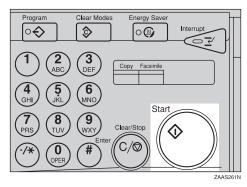
🖉 Note

□ If you are dialing with the **number** keys or Chain Dial, you can select the type of line you want (G3 or G4). ⇒ P.47 "*Chain Dial*"

✓ Reference

P.43 "DIALING" P.41 "CHANGING THE LINE TYPE"

5 Press the **[Start]** key.



The machine calls the destination. While it is dialing, the number or name which is programmed as the RTI or CSI in the machine of the other party is shown on the display. When connected, the machine starts scanning the original.

Dialling	Page	0
	Memory1	00%
(631)DI: [56] PARIS OFFICE		
*Press Stop key to cance	I TX	

P.169 "RTI/TTI"

After transmission the machine will return to standby mode.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.			1	00%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info	•

Sending Originals from the Exposure Glass

• Set the first page face down on the exposure glass.

3 Press the **[Start]** key.

The machine starts scanning the original.

Set the next original on the exposure glass within 10 seconds after the machine has finished scanning the first original.

🖉 Note

- □ Repeat steps **B** to **G** for all
- originals.
 Set the last original then press
 [#].

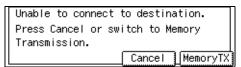
6 Press the **[Start]** key.

.

The machine starts to call the destination.

Vif the Connection Could Not Be Made

The following display appears if the fax could not be sent:



Do one of the following:

- Press [Cancel] and try again.
- Press **[Memory TX]** to have the machine scan in the document and then automatically redial the number.



WECM (Error Correction Mode)

This feature automatically sends data that wasn't transmitted successfully again using a technique called ECM, an internationally recognized protocol (requires that the destination machine has the same feature).

🖉 Note

□ By default, ECM is on. You can turn it off. \Rightarrow P.197 "ECM"

Transmission Result Report (Immediate Transmission)

If you turn this report on, a report will be printed after every Immediate Transmission so you have a record of whether the transmission was successful or not. If the machine is set up not to print this report and the fax message could not be successfully transmitted, the Error report is printed instead.

🖉 Note

- □ You can switch this report on or off using the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ If the page was sent successfully, the Page column gives the total number of pages that were sent successfully. The Not Sent column gives the number of pages that could not be sent successfully.

On-hook Dial

This is just like using the external telephone, except you do not have to pick up the external telephone before dialing. Just press the **[On Hook Dial]** key and dial the number. If you hear a voice, you can pick up the external telephone and speak with the other party.

Limitation

- □ This feature is not available in some countries.
- On-hook Dial does not work with ISDN lines.
- This feature is not available for the optional extra G3 Interface Unit.

PReference

P.173 "Monitor Volume"

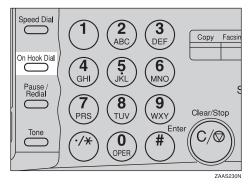
Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

✓ Reference

P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGI-NAL"

P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"

2 Press the **[On Hook Dial]** key.



You will hear a low tone from the internal speaker. If you wish to cancel this operation, press the **[On Hook Dial]** key again.

3 Dial.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er fa:	< no.
Immediate	ΤX				100%
63 DI :_			Desi	t: O	
		Mod	e]	In	fo.

The machine immediately dials the destination. If you make a mistake, press the **[On Hook Dial]** or **[Clear Modes]** key and return to step **2**.

4 When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the [Start] key.

Transmitting	Page O
	Memory100%
(<u>631</u>)DI 217	
*Press Stop key t	o cancel TX

- If you hear a voice, pick up the external telephone before you press the **[Start]** key and notify the destination that you want to send a fax message (ask them to switch to Facsimile mode).
- After transmission the machine will return to standby mode.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Immediate	TΧ			1	100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode	e] [Info) .]

Manual Dial

The external telephone is required.

Pick up the handset of the external telephone and dial. When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the **[Start]** key to send your fax message. If, on the other hand, you hear a voice at the other end, continue your conversation as you would normally over the telephone.

Limitation

- Manual Dial does not work with ISDN lines.
- □ This feature is not available for the optional extra G3 Interface Unit.
- The result of the transmission with manual dial is not mentioned in the Transmission Result Report (Immediate Transmission).

1 Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

✓ Reference

P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGI-NAL"

P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"

2 Pick up the external telephone.

You will hear a tone.

B Dial.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Immediate	TΧ				1	100%
163 DI:_			Dest	t	0	
		Mode	e		Info).]

If you make a mistake, replace the external telephone and try again from step **2**.

When the line is connected and you hear a high-pitched tone, press the [Start] key to send your fax message.

Transmitting					Page	0
				I	Memory1	00%
(<u>631</u>)DI:217						
*Press	Stop	key	to	cancel	TX	

5 Replace the handset of the external telephone.

After transmission the machine will return to standby mode.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Immediate	ΤX				1	00%
163 DI			Dest	t:	0	
		Mode	e]		Info).]

CANCELING AN IMMEDIATE TRANSMISSION

Canceling a Transmission Before You Have Pressed Start

Use this procedure to cancel a transmission before you have pressed the **[Start]** key.

Press the [Clear Modes] key.



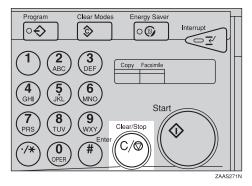
🖉 Note

2

When you have already set the original, you can also cancel an Immediate Transmission by removing the original from the machine.

Canceling a Transmission After You Have Pressed the Start Key

Press the [Clear/Stop] key then remove the original.



🖉 Note

□ If the transmission finishes while you are carrying out this procedure, it will not be canceled.

2

SCAN SETTINGS

You may wish to send many different types of fax message. Some of these may be difficult to reproduce at the other end. However, your machine has three settings that you can adjust to help you transmit your document with the best possible image quality.

Resolution:

Standard, Detail, Super Fine (option)

Image density:

Auto Image Density, Manual Image Density (7 levels)

Original type: Text, Text.Photo, Photo

Resolution

Images and text are scanned into the machine by converting them to sequences of dots. The frequency of dots determines the quality of the image and how long it takes to transmit. Therefore, images scanned at high resolution (**Super Fine**) have high quality but transmission takes longer. Conversely, low resolution (**Standard**) scanning results in less quality but your original is sent more quickly. Choose the setting that matches your needs based upon this trade off between speed and image clarity.

- Standard (8×3.85lines/mm, 200×100dpi) Select for originals containing normal sized characters.
- Detail (8×7.7lines/mm, 200×200dpi) Select for originals containing small characters or when you require greater clarity. This resolution is twice as fine as Standard.

Super Fine (optional Expansion Memory required: 16×15.4lines/mm, 400×400dpi) Select for originals with very fine details or when you require the best possible image clarity. This resolution is eight times as fine as Standard.

Limitation

- If the other party's machine does not support the resolution at which you are sending, this machine automatically switches to a resolution which is supported.
- Sending with Super Fine resolution requires that your machine has the optional Expansion Memory and the other party's machine has the capability to receive fax messages at Super Fine resolution.
- Note that even if the option is installed on your machine, transmission and reception may take place using **Detail** resolution if the other party's machine does not support this feature.

🔗 Note

- □ When the machine is turned on or modes are cleared, the resolution is set to **Standard** by default. You can change this with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ By default, the resolution returns to the home setting after every transmission. You change this with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Press the **[Resolution]** key to switch between resolutions. The indicators above the key show the current selection.

O Start Manual RM	Onicating OPrinter OError	O File Facsimile Error O Erro O TX File Statu]• \$\ 1 2 ■	O Immediate Trans	O Standard O Detail O Super Fine
[F1]	F2	F3	F4			

Original Type

If your original contains photographs, illustrations or diagrams with complex shading patterns or grays, select the appropriate Original Type to optimize image clarity.

Text

Text is selected when the **Photo** and **Text·Photo** indicators are not lit. Select **Text** to send an original containing a high-contrast blackand-white image. Use this setting even if your original contains text and photographs if you only want to send clearer text.

Text-Photo

Text-Photo is selected when the **Text-Photo** indicator is lit. Select **Text-Photo** to send an original containing both a high-contrast blackand-white image, such as text, and a halftone image such as a photograph.

Photo

Photo is selected when the **Photo** indicator is lit.

Select **Photo** to send an original containing a halftone image such as a photograph or a color original.

Limitation

If you select Text-Photo or Photo, the Resolution is automatically set to Detail. Even if you select Standard again, the image density will not return to Standard.

Note 🖉

- □ If you select **Text**•**Photo** or **Photo**, the transmission will take longer than when **Text** is selected.
- □ If you send a fax message with **Text·Photo** or **Photo** and the background of the received image is dirty, reduce the density setting and re-send the fax.
- □ When the machine is turned on or modes are cleared, the Original Type is set to **Text**. You can change this with the Initial Setup TX settings. \Rightarrow P.156 *"INITIAL SETUP TX"*
- □ By default, the machine returns to the Original Type home setting after every transmission. You can change this with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- Press the [Original Type] key repeatedly until the indicator matching the type you require is lit.



When both indicators are not lit, the Original Type is **Text**.

Image Density (Contrast)

The text and diagrams in your original should stand out clearly from the paper they are written on. If your original has a darker background than normal (for example, a newspaper clipping), or if the writing is faint, adjust the image density.

By default, this machine will automatically select a density setting appropriate to the original (Auto Image Density). If you wish to set the density yourself, use Manual Image Density.

Auto Image Density

The machine automatically selects an image density which is the most appropriate for the original.

By default, Auto Image Density is selected when the machine is turned on or modes are cleared. You can change this with the User Parameters. \Rightarrow P.206 "*Changing the User Parameters*"

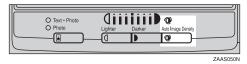
If the Auto Image Density indicator is not lit, press the **Q** key to turn it on.



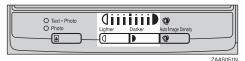
Manual Image Density

Use the Image Density keys to vary the image density within 7 levels.

Make sure that the Auto Image Density indicator is not lit. If it is lit press the W key to turn it off.



Press the **(** or **)** key to change the density. The indicators above the keys show the level.



Mixing Scan Settings in a Multiple Page Original

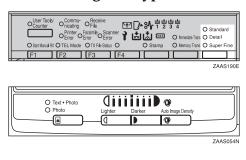
When sending an original consisting of several pages, you can select different Image Density, Resolution and Original Type settings for each page.

Set your original, select the scan settings for the first page, dial and press the **[Start]** key as you would normally. Then follow one of the following two procedures.

When Setting Originals on the Exposure Glass

While the machine is bleeping, you have about 60 seconds (10 for Immediate Transmission) to select density, resolution and original type. The remaining time is shown on the display.

- **1** Check which pages you wish to scan in with different settings.
- **2** Remove the previous page and set the next page.
- Select the Image Density, Resolution and Original Type.



🖉 Note

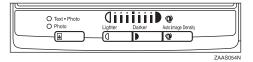
□ Adjust settings for each page before you press the **[Start]** key.

When Setting Originals in the Document Feeder (ARDF)

Check which pages you wish to scan in with different settings.

2 Select the Image Density, Resolution and Original Type before the next page is scanned.





CHANGING THE LINE TYPE

The optional ISDN Unit or optional extra G3 Interface Unit is required.

When the optional ISDN Unit and optional extra G3 Interface Unit are installed, you can connect to up to a maximum of 3 lines.

This machine comes with a single Analog (PSTN) line connection for G3 communication as standard.

Press the **[F4]** key to change the line type.

🖉 Note

- □ When you install the optional ISDN Unit, you can select G3 or G4 as the home position. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ When you install the optional extra G3 Interface Unit, you can select the line type home position. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- When sending a fax, you can select the line type if dialing with the number keys or Chain Dial.

When only the optional ISDN Unit is installed

Press the [F4] key to switch between G3 and G4.

O User Tools/ Counter O Start Manuel RX O TEL N F1 F2		O Immediate Trans	O Standard O Detail O Super Fine
			ZAAS180E

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tr	ans.			100%
163 DI :_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ When the **[F4]** key is lit, G4 is selected.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax n	ο.
Memory Tra	ns.			10	0%
64			Dest:	0	
		Mod		Info.	

- □ G3 is selected after power up or when the machine is reset.
- Whether the PSTN or ISDN line is used depends on the settings explained later in this section.

Limitation

□ If you select G4 mode, JBIG compression is not available.

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed

Press the [F4] key.

O Start Manual RX		O File Facsimile Error O Error O TX File Status		♪ 約 目目 1 2 ○ Stamp	O Immediate Trans	O Standard O Detail O Super Fine
F1	F2	F3	[F4			
						ZAAS180E

2 Press the ④ or **(b)** key to select the line from the options displayed.

_ine Selection:	Select mode with	\odot
G3 Auto Sel. /	G3-1Dir. / G3-2Dir.	
	OK	

When both the optional extra G3 Interface Unit and optional ISDN Unit are installed, the following display is shown:

Line Selection:	Select mode with 🖲 🕞
G3 Auto Sel. / G3-	1Dir. / G3-2Dir. / G4
	OK

🖉 Note

- If you choose "G3 Auto Select", the currently free G3 line is used resulting in increased efficiency.
- □ If you choose "G3-2 Dir.", the extra G3 line is used.

Press [OK].

Which line is used for G3 transmissions?

ISDN lines can be used for G3 communication as well as G4 communications, however, this machine is set by default to use the PSTN line for G3 transmissions.

Limitation

□ The optional extra G3 Interface Unit does not support ISDN.

🖉 Note

- When you use G3 with ISDN, you can set the subaddress.
- If you wish to use the digital (IS-DN) line for G3 transmissions, please contact your service representative.

This feature used when G4 is selected. The machine first tries a G4 communication and if it cannot connect because the receiver is not a G4 terminal, it automatically switches to G3 and redials.

🖉 Note

If the G3 line at the destination is connected to the ISDN via a TA (Terminal Adapter) or a PBX, since the called number is on ISDN, it is regarded as G4 and the Auto Identification feature may not automatically switch this machine to G3.

DIALING

There are three main ways to dial a number:

Number keys:

Enter numbers directly using the key pad on the right side of the operation panel.

Quick Dials:

When you have stored a destination's number in a Quick Dial key, you can dial the number by just pressing that key. Additionally, you can store a name that will appear on the display whenever you press that Quick Dial.

Speed Dials:

If you store a number in a Speed Dial, when you want to dial it just press the **[Speed Dial]** key followed by a 2 or 3 digit code. Like Quick Dials, you can store a name along with the number.

This section covers these features and others in more detail.

Number Keys

Enter numbers directly using the key pad on the right side of the operation panel.

🖉 Note

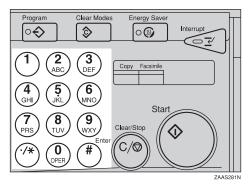
- Maximum length of a fax number: 254 digits.
- □ You can insert pauses and tones in a fax number. ⇒ P.45 "Pause", P.45 "Tone"
- □ If the optional ISDN Unit is installed, you may need to enter a subaddress. ⇒ P.46 "Subaddress"

Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGI-NAL"

P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"

2 Enter the fax number with the number keys.



The digits appear on the display as you enter them.

⊖Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Tr	rans.					100%
163 DI:4	1772865			Desi	t:	1
Add)	Ĺ	Me	ode		Info.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key to erase the wrong digits and try again.
- If you wish to send this message to more than one destination, press [Add], then enter the next destination.
- □ If the optional ISDN Unit is installed, select G3 or G4 before you go to the next step. ⇒ P.41 "CHANGING THE LINE TYPE"

Press the [Start] key.

Restrictions When Dialing with the number Keys

Fax numbers entered with the number keys are stored in internal memory (separate from memory for storing original data). Therefore, you cannot program more than 100 numbers with the number keys for the following:

- Destinations specified in a Memory Transmission (including Confidential Transmission and Polling Reception)
- Transfer Stations and End Receivers specified in a Transfer Request
- Destinations and Transfer Stations specified in a Group

For example, when 90 destinations are registered in a Group with the number keys, only 10 destinations can be dialed for Memory Transmission from the number keys.

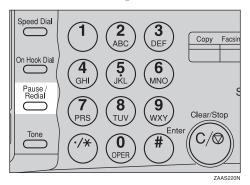
🔗 Note

- □ When this machine is requested to transfer a call (i.e. becomes a Transfer Station), 2 fax numbers are automatically stored. Therefore, the number of destinations that can be dialed from the number keys decreases by two whenever this machine is requested to transfer a call.
- When a total of 100 fax numbers is stored, only Immediate Transmission is allowed.
- □ If a memory file is awaiting transmission and the "Memory is full and you cannot enter with number keys" message is displayed when dialing with the number keys, you cannot dial any more numbers. That is because the fax numbers have been dialed with the number keys for some of the files awaiting transmission. When these files have been sent and their fax numbers are deleted from memory, additional fax numbers can be dialed.
- The display shows the percentage of free memory space for storing originals. Since fax numbers are stored in separate memory, dialing fax numbers with the number keys does not change the percentage on the display.

.

Pause

Press the **[Pause/Redial]** key when dialing or storing a number to insert about a two-second pause.



Limitation

□ You cannot insert a pause before the first digit of a fax number.

🖉 Note

- □ A pause is shown as a "-" on the display.
- You can insert a pause in numbers stored in Quick Dials and Speed Dials.

Tone

This feature allows a machine connected to a pulse dialing line to send tonal signals (for example if you want to use a special service on a tone dialing line). When you press the **[Tone]** key, the machine dials the number using tonal signals.



45

2

Limitation

- You cannot place a tone before the first digit of a fax number.
- □ Some services may not be available when using the **[Tone]** key.

🔗 Note

A tone is shown as a "•" on the display.

Sending Tonal Signals by ISDN (optional ISDN Unit Required)

You can still send tone signals to a G3 user even if the machine is only connected to an ISDN line.

🖉 Note

This feature can only be used for Memory or Immediate Transmission. You cannot dial through ISDN using On-hook Dial or Manual Dial.

Subaddress

The optional ISDN Unit is required.

ISDN allows two or more terminals (such as a fax machine and digital telephone) to be connected to a single line. These terminals are identified by their subaddress numbers. If the terminals connected to the line at a destination are assigned subaddresses, dialing a subaddress allows you to direct your fax message to a particular terminal at the destination.

Limitation

□ Subaddresses can only be used with ISDN.

🖉 Note

- □ You need to program a User Function key with the Subaddress function. ⇒ P.161 "ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"
- You can program a subaddress in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial.
- **1** Set your original and select any scan settings you require.
- **2** Select either G4 or G3 (ISDN).

🖉 Note

- When the optional ISDN Unit is installed, the line used for G3 is set to ISDN.
- Dial the fax number with the number keys.
- Press the User Function key ([F1]-[F3]) in which the subaddress function has been registered.



"/" will appear on the display.

()Ready	Press	Start	or	Clea	ar t	0 (cancel
Memory	Trans.						100%
\$ 64	31471022	262/_		De	st:		1
Add		[Mo	ode		I	nfo.

- Enter the destination subaddress with the number keys.
- **6** Press the **[Start]** key.

Chain Dial

This allows you to compose a telephone number from various parts, some of which may be stored in Quick Dials or Speed Dials and some of which may be input using the number keys.

Limitation

Maximum length of telephone or fax number: 254 digits

🖉 Note

For Memory Transmission and Immediate Transmission, insert a pause between numbers. For Onhook Dial and Manual Dial, no pause is needed.

Assume that 01133 is stored in Quick Dial 01 and that 1 is stored in Speed Dial 01.

- Place the original and select any scan settings you require.
- ② Press the Quick Dial key [01].
- ③ Press the [Pause/Redial] key.
- ④ Press the [Speed Dial] key and [0] and [1] using the number keys (if the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is installed, three digits are reeded to specify a Speed Dial).
- ⑤ Enter [5], [5], [5], [3], [3] [3] with the number keys.

O Press the [Start] key.

Quick Dials

When you have stored a destination's number in a Quick Dial key, you can dial the number by just pressing that key.

Additionally, you can store a name that will appear on the display whenever you press that Quick Dial.

🔗 Note

- □ To check the contents of the Quick dial, print the list. \Rightarrow P.154 "*RE*-*PORTS/LISTS*"
- □ If a Quick Dial key is currently used for another function, e.g. a Group Dial, you cannot store a number in it.
- Flip the Quick Dial plate over to access Quick Dial keys 01-28 or 29-56.
- □ You can have the label stored with a Quick Dial printed on the first page received at the other end. ⇒ P.96 "Label Insertion"

Reference

P.43 "DIALING"

- 1 Set your original and select any scan settings you require. ⇒ P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"
- **2** Press the Quick Dial key in which the destination's number is programmed.

O Start Manual	RX O TEL Mod	le OTX File S	tatus O	O Stamp	O Memory	Trans O Supe	r Fine
[F1] [F2	F3	[F4				
(01	02	03	04	05	06	07	
HA] [B) [C) (E] [F	G	וכ
08	09	10	11	12	13	14	
Цн] [][]] [K] [M] [N	
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
h] [P	Q	R	S] [T	U	וכ
22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
	W) (X	ΙY	Z		企	וכ

ZAAS200E

If the destination's name has been stored, the name is shown on the display. If it is not, the fax number is shown.

()Ready	Press St	art or I	Clear	to (cancel
Memory Tr					100%
(634)DI:[56] PARIS	OFFICE	Dest	t: T	1
Add)	Mo	de	١I	nfo.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press the [Clear/Stop] key and try again.
- □ If you wish to dial another destination, press **[Add]** and dial another fax number.

Press the [Start] key.

Speed Dials

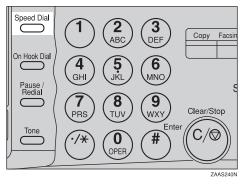
If you store a number in a Speed Dial, when you want to dial it, just press the **[Speed Dial]** key followed by a 2 or 3 digit code. \Rightarrow P.138 *"Registering Speed Dials"*

🖉 Note

- To check the contents of registered Speed Dials, print the Speed Dial list.
- As standard, you can use codes 00-99 for Speed Dials. If the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is installed, codes 000 to 999 become available.
- □ If a search letter is registered with a Speed Dial, you can find this number quickly using the Telephone Directory feature. ⇒ P.49 *"Telephone Directory"*
- □ You can have the label stored with a Speed Dial printed on the first page received at the other end. ⇒ P.96 "Label Insertion"

Place your original and select any scan settings you require. ⇒ P.37 "SCAN SETTINGS"





()Ready	Set orig	inals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ans.			100%
463 DI : Sa	.D		Dest:	0
	Tel.Dir.	Mode		Info.

Enter the two digit code (00 to 99) or three digit code (000 to 999) for the destination with the number keys.

⊖Ready	Press Sta	art or I	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Tr					100%
63 DI -	SP.DOOO ABC	CONPAN'	Y Dest	:	1
Add)	Mo	de]	[nfo.]

If the destination's name has been programmed, the name is shown on the display. Otherwise, the fax number is shown.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ If you wish to dial another destination, press **[Add]** and dial another fax number.

4 Press the [Start] key.

Telephone Directory

This feature lets you find a stored Speed Dial quickly by just entering a single letter, e.g., the first letter of the name stored for that number.

Preparation

To use the Telephone Directory feature, you need to register a search letter when you program Speed Dials. \Rightarrow P.138 "*Registering Speed Dials*"

Limitation

- □ Speed Dial codes cannot be searched for by symbol or number.
- Names enclosed within brackets are not searched for.

🖉 Note

□ If you store the Telephone Directory function in a User Function key beforehand, you can bring up the Telephone Directory screen with a single key press. ⇒ P.161 "AS-SIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"

Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

Press the [Speed Dial] key.

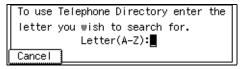


Press [Tel.Dir.] .

()Ready	Set orig	ginals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI : Sp.	0		Dest:	0
	Tel.Dir.	Mode	e [Info.

4 Enter the search letter by pressing one of the Quick Dial keys (A to Z).

	O Start Manual R	X O TEL Mode	O TX File State	JS O	O Stamp	O Memory Tra	ns O Super Fine
L	[F1	F2	F3][F4			
[(01	02	03	04	05	06	07
Н	A	В	C	D	E	F	G
	08	09	10	11	12	13	14
П	H		J	ПК] [L	М	
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
h	0	P	Q] [R	S	Т	
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
٢	V	W	X	ΙY	Z		L£
			1				
							ZAAS200E



The names or fax numbers registered in Speed Dials are shown in numerical order on the display.

Tel. Dir.:[A]	Select with 🖲 🕞
SR0000 ABC CONPANY SR0051 ANDREW	SRDO50 ADAMS COMP~
	Cancel OK

5 Press the ④ or ⑤ key to select the destination then press [OK].

Tel. Dir.:[A]	Select with 🖲 🕞
SP.D.OOO ABC CONPANY	SPD050 ADAMS COMP~
SP.DO51 ANDREW	
	Cancel OK

Solution Note

- □ If the list does not contain the desired destination, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key to try again.
- □ If you wish to dial another destination, press **[Add]** and dial another fax number.

Press the [Start] key.

Groups

If you frequently send the same message to more than one place, program these numbers into a Group. Then you can send the messages to all the destinations in that Group with just a few keystrokes. You can also program a name for the Group (for example, "Branch Offices") which will be displayed before you press the **[Start]** key.

Preparation

You need to program the Groups. \Rightarrow P.131 "*Registering Groups*"

Limitation

- A Quick Dial programmed with a Group cannot be used for other functions.
- □ Groups can only be used for Memory Transmission; they cannot be used for Immediate Transmission.
- If you do not assign Groups to a Quick Dial key, you need to have stored the Group function in a User Function key beforehand in order to access them.

🖉 Note

- Groups are only available with Memory Transmission.
- □ To check the contents of the Groups, print the list.
- □ You can program up to 9 Groups .
- □ You can store up to 256 destinations in a Group (up to 500 destinations with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed). If a Quick Dial or Speed Dial is registered in two Groups, it takes up the space of one destination. If the total number of dials exceeds 256 (up to 500 destinations with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed), you cannot specify anymore.

□ Groups can contain Transfer Station codes, but note that these Groups cannot be used for normal transmission because the Transfer Station codes are not dialable numbers. ⇒ P.178 "Multistep Transfer"

Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

- **2** Specify the Group in one of the following ways:
 - Press the Quick Dial key in which the Group is programmed.

	O Start Manus	RX O TEL M	ode OTX File S	itatus O	O Stamp	O Memor	y Trans O Super Fir	пе
-	F1	F2	F3	F4				
(01	02	03	04	05	06	07)
Н	Α	В	С	D	_ [E] [F	G	
Ц	08	09	10	11	12	13	14)]
μ	Н		J	IК		M		Щ
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	J
h	<u> </u>	<u>I</u> P	Q	R	S] [T		
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	۱I
Ľ	V] [w) (X	ΙY	Z			
								-
								_
							ZAAS2	00E

• Press the User Function key **[F1]—[F4]** assigned the Group function, then enter the Group number with the number keys.

🖉 Note

□ To see which Groups have been programmed, press [GpD List] after you press the User Function ([F1]—[F4]) key. ⇒ P.161 "ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"

The Group number is shown on the display. If the Group Name is programmed, the name is also shown on the display.

⊖Ready	Press St	art or	Clear 1	to cancel
Memory Tr	ans.			100%
163 DI:	50] GR010	BRANCH	~ Dest:	3
Add)	Mo	de	Info.

2

🖉 Note

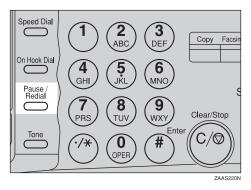
- If you make a mistake, press the [Clear/Stop] key and start again.
- □ If you wish to dial another destination, press **[Add]** and dial another fax number.

Press the [Start] key.

Redial

The machine memorizes the last 10 destinations that have been dialed. If you wish to send a message to a destination which you faxed to recently, the Redial feature saves you finding and entering the number again.

Press the [Pause/Redial] key.



2 A list of previously dialed numbers will flash up. If you cannot see the number you need use the [↑Prev.] and [↓Next] keys to scroll through them. Then enter the code for the number you wish to redial e.g., "01".

Redial:	Enter	no.	of	dest	ination	
01 471312262		02	47	3166;	26	
03 3332232		- 04	51	51234		
(friev.) 🔾	Next)			Cancel	

Limitation

- □ The following kinds of destinations are not memorized:
 - Quick Dials
 - Speed Dials
 - Group Dials
 - Destinations dialed by a Program
 - Destinations dialed as End Receivers for Transfer Request
 - Forwarding terminal of the substitute reception
 - Destination of Memory File Transfer
 - Destinations dialed using the external telephone or optional handset keypad
 - Destinations dialed by Redial (regarded as already memorized)
 - Any destinations after the first number if multiple destinations were dialed
- Do not dial any digits before you press the [Pause/Redial] key. If you press the [Pause/Redial] key after entering digits using the number keys, a pause will be entered instead.

🖉 Note

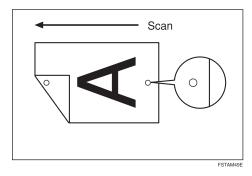
□ If the receiver uses a fax machine of the same manufacturer that is capable of registering the RTI, that name may be shown on the display instead of the fax number.

TRANSMISSION FEATURES

Stamp

ARDF is required.

When sending a fax message using the Document Feeder (ARDF), the machine can stamp a circle mark at the bottom of the original. Double sided documents are stamped on the bottom of the front page and top of the rear page. This indicates that the original has been successfully stored in memory for Memory Transmission, or that it has been successfully sent for Immediate Transmission.



Limitation

- Stamp only works when scanning from the Document Feeder (AR-DF).
- You cannot turn the Stamp feature on or off while a document is being scanned.
- Do not open the document feeder (ARDF) while scanning the document. Document jam should occur.

🖉 Note

□ When the stamp starts getting lighter, replace the cartridge. ⇒ P.222 "REPLACING THE STAMP CARTRIDGE" □ By default, Stamp is turned off. If you use this feature often, you can adjust the User Parameters so that the home setting is on. In this case, Stamp can easily be turned off for any single transmission by pressing the **[Stamp]** key. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Press the [Stamp] key.



The Stamp indicator will light. Pressing the **[Stamp]** key again will turn it off.

ID Transmission (Closed Network)

This feature allows you to restrict transmission of messages only to machines of the same make, and only to those machines that have the same Polling ID. The transmission options let you switch ID transmission on and off for each separate transmission.

Note

□ The default setting is off. Turn this feature on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

F Code (SUB)

Normally you can only use Confidential Transmission to send to fax machines of the same make that have the Confidential Reception feature. However, if the other machine supports a similar feature called "F Code", you can send fax messages to the other party using this method instead.

Preparation

You need to assign the F Code feature to a User Function key beforehand. \Rightarrow P.161 "ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"

You can only use this feature with G3 communications.

You cannot use Chain Dial with this feature.

You cannot select this function when carrying out standard Confidential Transmission

🖉 Note

- The ID can be up to 20 digits long and consist of digits, spaces, * and #.
- □ Make sure the ID matches the specification of the fax you are sending to.
- You can store IDs in Quick Dials, Speed Dials, Groups and Programs.
- Messages you send using this feature are marked "SUB" on all reports.
- **1** Set your document and make any changes to the scan settings if necessary.
- **2** Dial the destination fax number using the number keys.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
63 DI :_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e [Info.

Press the User Function key assigned with the F Code feature.

O Counter	Ols/ Onicating OPrinter RX O TEL Mod	Facsimile Facsimile	Scanner 👔	[}+ \$} 	O Innediat	O Sta e Trans O De Trans O Su	tail
[F1	F2][F3] [F4				

Enter the function number for SUB(S) on the number keys.

F Code:	Enter number
1 SUB(S)	2 SID(I)
β SEP(P)	4 PWD(W)
ë trace	Cancel

Enter the SUB code with the number keys.

⊖Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Tr	ans.					100%
1 63 DI 1	2345678	3S_		Dest	t:	1
Add)		Mo	ode]	Info.

6 Press the **[Start]** key.

()Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cance	۶l
Memory Tr	rans.					100)%
463 DI: 1	2345678	3P9876	543	Dest	t:	1	
Add)	(Mo	ode		Info.	

🖉 Note

□ If you use Immediate Transmission and the destination fax machine does not support the F Code feature, a message will appear on the display to inform you of this. In this case, press **[OK]** to cancel the transmission.

F Code (SID)

There are times when you may wish to use a "SID" (Sender ID) when sending confidential faxes with the F Code "SUB" feature.

Limitation

□ You can enter a SID up to 20 digits long.

🖉 Note

☐ Messages you send using this feature are marked "SID" on all reports. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"

JBIG Transmission

The optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is required.

If you use JBIG (Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group) compression you can send photographic originals faster than the other compression method.

Limitation

- **This feature is not available in G4.**
- □ If ECM is turned off, JBIG Transmission is not available.
- This feature requires that the other party's fax machine has both the JBIG function and ECM function (G3 communication only).

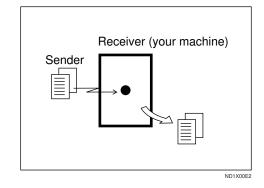
Note

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, JBIG transmission from the optional extra G3 Interface Unit (G3-2) is available as standard.

3. Receiving a Fax Message

IMMEDIATE RECEPTION

Each page of a received fax message is printed as soon as it is received. This method is used for standard fax messages.



Display During Reception

The sender's RTI or CSI appears on the first line.

PARIS BRANC	Н	A4 ·	->A4 P.	.002	
⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
63 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info) .]

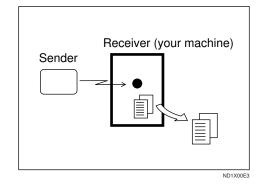
This machine supports **Standard**, **Detail**, Fine (optional Expansion Memory required) and **Super Fine** (optional Expansion Memory required) resolutions for reception. If you do not have the optional Expansion Memory, faxes sent at Fine or **Super Fine** resolution will be printed on your machine at **Detail** resolution. This may result in a slightly different from the sender's intention.

Reception will not take place if there is not enough free memory left. If free memory reaches 0% during Immediate Reception, any further reception becomes impossible and the current communication is terminated.

.

MEMORY RECEPTION

The machine waits until all pages of the message have been received into memory before printing the message.



This method is used with the following features:

- Combine 2 originals ⇒ P.67 "Combine 2 originals"
- Multi-copy when set to multiple copies ⇒ P.65 "Multi-copy Reception"
- Reverse Order Printing ⇒ P.68 "Reverse Order Printing"
- Substitute Reception ⇒ P.57 "Substitute Reception"
- 2-sided Printing (optional Duplex Unit required) ⇒ P.65 "2-Sided Printing"

∰Important

- □ All the messages stored in memory are deleted if the power is switched off for about more than one hour.
- The machine may not be able to receive large numbers of messages or messages with a high data content. In such cases, we recommend you switch the above features off or add a memory card.

Limitation

The machine may not be able to receive fax messages when the free memory space is low.

🖉 Note

□ If the memory free space reaches 0% during Memory Reception, the machine can no longer receive the current fax message and stops communicating.

3

Substitute Reception

If any of the conditions listed below are met, the machine automatically switches to Memory Reception mode and stores messages in memory instead of printing them. This reception mode, in which a received fax message is stored in memory unprinted, is called Substitute Reception. Messages received using Substitute Reception are automatically printed when the condition which caused the machine to use Substitute Reception is rectified. Substitute Reception takes place when:

- Paper runs out
- Toner runs out
- Paper is jammed
- A cover is open
- A fax is received during a copy or print run

Limitation

Reception may not take place if there is not enough free memory left.

🖉 Note

- The Receive File indicator lights to let you know when message(s) have been received using Substitute Reception.
- If free memory reaches 0% during Substitute Reception, any further reception becomes impossible and the current communication is terminated.

Screening Out Messages from Anonymous Senders

To help you screen out unwanted messages that may fill up machine memory, the machine can be programmed to only use Substitute Reception under the following conditions.

Four settings are available:

- "When RTI or CSI is received"
- "Free"
- "disable"
- "Polling ID"

🖉 Note

- □ The default setting is "When RTI or CSI is received", i.e. only store messages when the RTI/CSI is present. You can change this with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- Even if the sender does not have an RTI or CSI, the machine will still receive messages using Substitute Reception if:
 - Paper becomes jammed while the power switch is on
 - For some reason printing is not possible e.g., copy job is in progress

When RTI or CSI is Received

The machine switches to Substitute Reception only when the sender has programmed their RTI or CSI. If the power is switched off for more than an hour, all the messages received into memory are deleted. In such a case, the Power Failure Report or the TCR can be used to identify which messages are lost so you can ask the senders to transmit them again.

Important

If a sender has not programmed their RTI or CSI, the machine may reject an important fax message. We recommend that you ask important senders to register an RTI or CSI in advance.

🖓 Free

The machine switches to Substitute Reception regardless of whether or not the sender has programmed their RTI or CSI.

Polling ID

The machine switches to Substitute Reception only when you have received a message with the same Polling ID of your machine.

SELECTING THE RECEPTION MODE

There are two ways you can set up your machine to handle incoming calls:

- Facsimile mode
- Telephone mode (optional handset or external Telephone required)

The default setting is Facsimile mode. You can change this with the Initial Setup RX. \Rightarrow P.158 *"INITIAL SETUP* RX"

Limitation

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, the reception mode is automatically set to facsimile mode and cannot be changed.

Facsimile Mode (Auto Reception Mode)

When a telephone call comes in, the machine receives it automatically as a fax message. Use this setting for a dedicated fax line.

Telephone Mode

When a call comes in, you have to pick up the handset or external telephone and decide whether the call is a fax message yourself. If you hear a voice, continue your conversation as you would using a normal telephone. If you hear high pitched beeps, instruct the machine to receive the fax by following the procedure below.

Use this setting if you wish to share the line between the fax machine and a telephone.

Receiving a Fax in Telephone Mode

This feature needs a User Function key programmed as Start Manual RX. By default, **[F1]** key is already assigned this function. \Rightarrow P.161 "*AS*-*SIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS*"

- When the machine rings, pick up the handset.
- ② If you hear beeps, press the User Function key ([F1]-[F4]) which has been programmed as the Start Manual RX key.
- ③ Replace the handset. The machine will start receiving.

Changing from Facsimile Mode to Telephone Mode

This function also requires the use of a User Function key. By default, **[F2]** key is assigned as the **[TEL Mode]** key.

To change the reception mode, press the User Function key which has been programmed as the Telephone Mode key. \Rightarrow P.161 *"ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"*

.

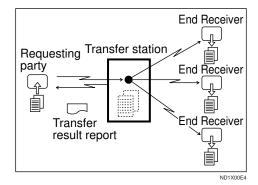
3

RECEPTION FUNCTIONS

Transfer Station

Transfer Stations allow you to expand the standard features of your fax machine to set up complex networks. Transfer Stations must be machines of the same make.

The diagram below may make the concept clearer.



The following terminology is used in this section.

Requesting Party

The machine where the message originates from, i.e. the machine making a Transfer Request.

Transfer Station

The machine that forwards the incoming message to another destination, i.e. the machine that receives the Transfer Request. In this section this refers to your machine.

End Receiver

The final destination of the message, i.e. the machine that the Transfer Station sends to. End Receivers must be programmed into Quick Dials, Speed Dials or Groups in the Transfer Station (this machine).

Limitation

- Polling ID's of the Requesting Party and Transfer Station must be identical for this feature to work.
- □ If the Transfer Report setting is not programmed at the Transfer Station, reception will not take place.
- This machine will not receive a Transfer Request unless it has enough free memory to store two or more destinations dialed from the number keys.
- □ If the Requesting Party specifies a Group for the End Receivers and the total number of End Receivers exceeds 300, (500 with optional Fax Feature Expander installed) the Transfer Station cannot transfer the message and sends a Transfer Result Report to the Requesting Party.

₽ Reference

P.93 "TRANSFER REQUEST"

🖗 Multistep Transfer

The principles of Transfer Stations can be used to build up a multi-step facsimile network where messages are passed through several Transfer Stations. By programming the end receivers in a Transfer Station Group, you can enable this machine to transfer messages onto other Transfer Stations.

For more information, contact your service representative.

This feature can only be used if the machines are made by the same maker.

. . .

Reference P 178 "Multistan Tra

.

P.178 "Multistep Transfer"

Sending the Transfer Result Report

This machine compares the own fax number of the Requesting Party with the Requesting Party's number programmed in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and if the lower five digits of the two numbers match, it sends the Transfer Result report to the Requesting Party.

For example:

• Requesting Party's own dial number:

001813-11112222

Transfer Station's Quick Dial:
 03–11112222

Transfer Result Report

.

This reports whether transmission to the End Receivers was successful or not.

Preparation

Register the own fax number in advance. \Rightarrow P.41 "CHANGING THE LINE TYPE"

When the Transfer Station has transferred the message to all End Receivers, it sends the Transfer Result Report back to the Requesting Party. The machine prints the report if it cannot be sent back to the Requesting Party. You must program the fax number of the requesting party in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial in the Transfer Station. \Rightarrow P.125 "*Registering Quick Dials*", P.138 "*Registering Speed Dials*"

🖉 Note

□ By default, a portion of the original image is printed on this report. You can turn this off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

ID Reception (Closed Network)

If you wish to limit reception of messages to those from machines of the same make and with the same Polling ID, contact your service representative to turn this feature on.

F Code (SEP)

Normally you can only use Polling Reception to receive faxes from machines that have the Polling Reception feature of the same make. However, if the other machine of another make supports a polling reception, you can receive fax messages from the other party using this method instead.

Preparation

You need to assign the F Code feature to a User Function key beforehand. \Rightarrow P.161 "Storing/Editing the Contents of a User Function Key"

Limitation

- □ You can only use this feature with a G3 line (not with G4).
- □ You cannot use Chain Dial with this feature.

🖉 Note

- □ The ID can be up to 20 digits long and consist of digits.
- □ Make sure the ID matches the specification of the fax you are sending to.

- □ You can store IDs in Quick Dials, Speed Dials, Groups and Programs with number keys, space, # and *.
- Messages you receive using this feature are marked "SEP" on all reports.
- Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown. Then enter the fax number.

()Ready	Set o	originals.	Ente	er -	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				1	100%
163 DI:_			Dest		0	
		Mod	e][Info) .]

2 Press the User Function key assigned with the F Code feature.

	O Start Manual RX	O Error O	O File Facsimile Scann Error O Error O TX File Status	" 1 占	• € 1 2 1 2 0 Stamp	O Immediate Trans	O Standard O Detail O Super Fine
	[F1]	[F2]]	F3	F4			
							ZAAS160E

Enter the function number for SEP(P) on the number keys.

F Code:	Enter number
1 SUB(S)	2 SID(I)
3 SEP(P)	4 PWD(W)
б Сресе	Cancel

Enter the SEP code with the number keys.

()Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Ti	rans.					100%
163 DI: 1	12345678	3P_		Dest	t:	1
Add)	[Me	ode		Info.

5 Press [Mode].

The Transmission Mode menu is displayed.

⊖Ready	Press	Start	or	Clear	to	cancel
Memory Ti	rans.					100%
163 DI : 1	2345678	3P98765	543_	Dest		1
Add)	[Мо	de		Info.]

6 Enter the function number for "Polling RX" on the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(Terev.) (Vext) Exit

🖉 Note

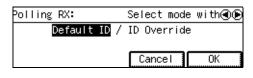
□ If you can't see the function number, search for it using the [**↑Prev.**] and [**↓Next**] arrow keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter	number 💻
) Polling	
11 Transfer Request 1:	2 Options	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		Exit

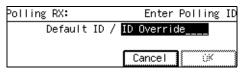
Depending which method you are using, choose one of the following procedures:

Default ID Polling Reception

Press the (1) or (2) key to change the Default ID and press [OK].



- **ID** Override Polling Reception
- Press the (1) or (b) key to change the Override ID and press [OK].



2 Enter a polling ID (4 characters) with the number keys and Quick Dial keys. The ID can contain digits 0–9 and letters A-F (0000 and FFFF are not available).

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.

Press [OK].

9 Press [Exit].

The display returns to the Transmission Mode menu and the Polling Reception function is now checked.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter	number	
10 Polling TX	11∽Polling		
12 Transfer Request	12 Options		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit	_

Press the [Start] key.

F Code (PWD)

There are times when you may wish to use a password when receiving faxes by polling with the F Code "SEP" feature. \Rightarrow P.61 "*F* Code (SEP)"

Limitation

You can enter a password up to 20 digits long.

🖉 Note

Messages you send using this feature are marked "PWD" on all reports.

JBIG Reception

The optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is required.

It allows you to receive messages sent in the JBIG format.

Limitation

- □ If ECM is turned off, JBIG Reception is not available.
- □ This feature is not available with G4 lines.

🖉 Note

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, JBIG reception from the optional extra G3 Interface Unit (G3-2) is available as standard. 3

PRINTING FUNCTIONS

Print Completion Beep

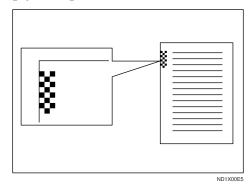
By default, the machine beeps to let you know when a received message has been printed.

🖉 Note

□ You can alter the volume of the beep or turn it off completely (set the volume to the minimum level).
 ⇒ P.173 "Monitor Volume"

Chequered Mark

By default, a chequered mark is printed on the first page of fax messages to help you separate them.

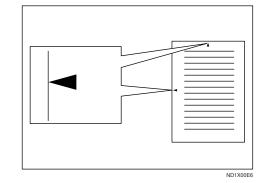


🖉 Note

□ You can turn this feature off with the Initial Setup RX settings. ⇒ P.158 *"INITIAL SETUP RX"*

Center Mark

By default, marks are printed halfway down the left side and at the top center of each page received. This makes it easy for you to position a hole puncher correctly when you file received messages.



Limitation

□ The center mark may deviate a little from the exact center of the edge.

🖉 Note

□ You can turn this feature off with the Initial Setup RX. \Rightarrow P.158 "INI-TIAL SETUP RX"

Reception Time

You can have the date and time when a message was received printed at the bottom of the received image. This feature is turned off by default—turn it on with the Initial Setup RX settings. \Rightarrow P.158 *"INITIAL SETUP RX"*

Limitation

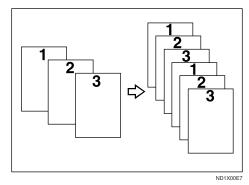
When a received message is printed on two or more sheets, the date and time is printed on the last page.

🔗 Note

The date and time when the message was printed can also be recorded on the message. If you need this feature, please contact your service representative.

Multi-copy Reception

If you switch this feature on, multiple copies of each incoming fax message will be printed. You can also choose to have multiple copies made of messages from particular senders. \Rightarrow P.158 "INITIAL SETUP RX", P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"



Limitation

The maximum number of copies that can be made of each message is 10. If you are using Multi-copy with Specified Senders, the maximum number is 10.

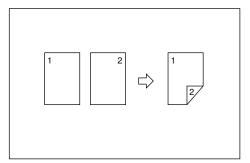
🖉 Note

- □ By default this feature is turned off. Switch it on and set the number of copies with the Initial Setup RX settings. ⇒ P.158 *"INI-TIAL SETUP RX"*
- Note that the machine will use Memory Reception for Multi-copy Reception.

2-Sided Printing

The optional Duplex Unit is required.

With this option installed, you can have a received message printed on both sides of the paper. By default, this feature is turned off. Switch it on with the Initial Setup RX settings and select lengthwise \Box copy paper. \Rightarrow P.158 "INITIAL SETUP RX"



Limitation

□ To use this function all pages of the received document must be of the same size-inform the sending party of this beforehand if necessary. You must also have paper set in your machine of the same size as that sent by the sending party $(8^1/_2"\times11"\rightarrow8^1/_2"\times11", 8^1/_2"\times14"\rightarrow$ $8^{1}/2^{"}\times 14^{"}, A4 \rightarrow A\overline{4}, B4 \rightarrow B\overline{4}$ are typical examples, whether A3 and B5 sizes are scanned in correctly will depend on the fax machine). This machine will scan in correctly landscape 11"×17", 8¹/₂"×14", 8¹/₂"×11", A3, B4, A4, B5 and por-trait 8¹/₂"×11", 5¹/₂"×8¹/₂", A4, B5 and A5. The table below shows the results that can be achieved when sending and receiving using this machine.

	Originals		Top Binding	Sido Pinding
	Onginals		TOP BITUING	Side binding
		⇔		
(11"		⇔		
8.5" × 11"		⇔		
		⇔		
8.5" x 14" / 11" x 17"		⇔		
8 5" x 14"		⇔		

- This feature works only when all pages are of the same width and are received into memory.
- Note that the machine will use Memory Reception for 2-Sided Printing.
- □ This feature cannot be used with Combine 2 originals.
- Printouts may vary in their direction/orientation depending on how the sender set them.
- □ If another party sends you a fax and their machine is not able to detect the size of the original correctly, the message may come out truncated, separated or containing excess white space when printed at your end. For example, if the sending machine thinks a B5 original is a B4 original, it will be printed at your end on B4 size paper even if you have B5 paper available in your machine.

🖉 Note

□ You can choose to have messages only from selected senders printed in this way. ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"

180 Degree Rotation Printing

When printing on both sides of the paper, this machine rotates images as shown in the diagram.

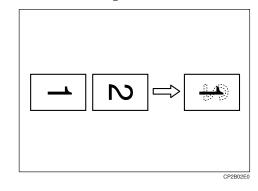
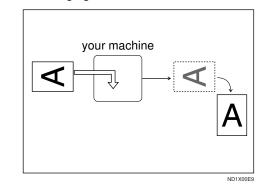


Image Rotation

If you have installed paper in the cassette sideways \square , incoming fax messages will be rotated automatically to fit on the paper.



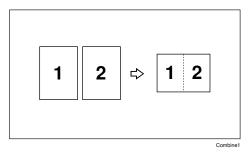
🖉 Note

□ You can choose to have received messages printed from the specified tray. ⇒ P.213 "*Paper Feed Selection*"

Combine 2 originals

When two messages of the same size and direction are received consecutively, they are printed on a single sheet when you turn this feature on. This can help you economize on paper.

- Two A5 messages are printed side by side on a sheet of A4 .
- Two B5 messages are printed side by side on a sheet of B4 .
- Two A4 messages are printed side by side on a sheet of A3 .
- Two 8¹/₂"×5¹/₂" □ messages are printed side by side on a sheet of 8¹/₂"×11"□.
- Two 8¹/₂"×11" messages are printed side by side on a sheet of 11"×17" ■.



Limitation

- □ This feature does not work with messages larger than A5 □, 5¹/₂"×8¹/₂" □, B5 □, A4 □ or 8¹/₂"×11" □. When A5 □, 5¹/₂"×8¹/₂" □, B5 □, A4 □, or 8¹/₂"×11" □ size paper is loaded in the machine, each page of the received message is output on a single sheet.
- If paper matching the size and direction of a received document is not available, Combine 2 originals is not possible.

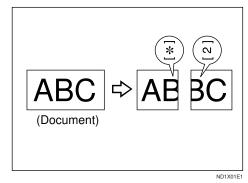
□ When "Combine 2 originals" and "2-Sided Printing" are selected at the same time, combine 2 originals takes priority and 2–sided printing is canceled.

🖉 Note

- □ By default this feature is turned off. Switch it on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ This feature uses Memory Reception.

Page Separation and Length Reduction (not available in some countries)

When the size of a received message is longer than the paper loaded in the machine, each page of the message can be split and printed on several sheets, or reduced and printed on a single sheet. For example, this feature splits the received message if the excess length is about 0.79" or more, and reduces it if the excess length is within about 0.79". When a message is split, the split mark (*) is inserted at the split position and about 0.39" of the split area is duplicated on the top of the second sheet.

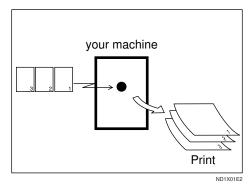


🖉 Note

- Your service representative can customize this feature with the following settings. Bracketed values are defaults.
 - Reduction (on)
 - Print split mark (on)
 - Overprinting (on)
 - Overprinting length (0.39")
 - Guideline for split (when message is 0.79" longer than paper)
- □ You can adjust the overprinting length and length of reduction within the following ranges:
 - Guideline for split: 0.2"~6.1" (0.2" steps)
 - Overprinting length: 0.16", 0.39", 0.6"

Reverse Order Printing

Normally, received pages are printed and stacked on the tray in the order they are received. If you turn this feature on, the machine will start printing the message from the last page received.



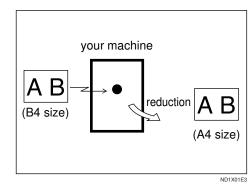
🔗 Note

□ By default, this feature is turned off. Switch it on with the Initial Setup RX. \Rightarrow P.158 "INITIAL SETUP RX"

- □ When this feature is on, the first page will be printed last.
- □ This feature uses Memory Reception.

Page Reduction

If you have switched this feature on and you receive a message that is longer than the paper in the cassette, usually the machine prints it on two pages. If you turn this feature on the machine reduces the width and length of the received image so that it will fit on one page. If A4D paper size is loaded and a message of B4 D size is received, the machine will reduce the message to a single A4D sheet.



🖉 Note

□ By default this feature is turned off. Switch it on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

P.67 "Page Separation and Length Reduction (not available in some countries)"

TSI Print

Usually the sender's TTI is printed on received messages. If the sender has not programmed their TTI, you will not be able to identify them. However, if you turn this feature on, the sender's RTI or CSI is printed instead so you can find out where the message came from. \Rightarrow P.169 "*RTI/TTI*" \Rightarrow P.200 "G3 Analog Line"

🖉 Note

□ You can turn it on or off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

CIL/TID Print

The optional ISDN Unit is required.

Two features are provided for identification of messages received by G4 (ISDN). If turned on, this information will be printed on every page.

The CIL (Call Identification Line) refers to the combination of the receiver's own fax number, name, the sender's own fax number and name, time, and page number. The default setting is on. The TID refers to the name registered by the sender in their TTI. The default setting is off.

Limitation

- □ These features are available only when receiving in G4 mode.
- □ If the sender's TID contains double-byte characters (e.g. Chinese characters), the TID will not be printed even if TID Print is turned on.

🖉 Note

□ You can turn CIL and TID on or off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 *"Changing the User Parameters"*

When There is No Paper of the Correct Size

If there is no paper in your machine that matches the size of a received message, the machine will choose a paper size based upon the paper you have available. For example, if your machine has LG $(8^1/_2"\times14")\Box$ and DLT $(11"\times17")\Box$ installed and you receive a LT $(8^1/_2"\times11")\Box$ size message, check the LT $(8^1/_2"\times11")$ column of the table below. The paper size at the top has the highest priority. In this case, since LG $(8^1/_2"\times14")\Box$ is higher priority than DLT $(11"\times17")\Box$, the message is printed on LG $(8^1/_2"\times14")\Box$.

If only B5 is loaded and you receive an DLT (11"×17") ressage, the received message is stored in memory and will not be printed.

3

Priority Table

		Received Image Size								
		A3,DLT	B4	A4,LT	A4,LT	B5	A5,HLT	LG	F/F4	
	1	A3	B4	LT	A4	B5		LG	F/F4	
	2	DLT	A3	LT	A4	B5	HLT	A4	LG	
	3	A4	DLT	A4	LT	B4	A5	A4	A4	
	4	A4	B5	A4		A4	A5		A4	
	5		B5	F/F4	A3	A4	LT			
	6		A4	LG	F/F4			F		
orities	7	F/F4	A4	A3			A4	B4	B4	
elect Pri	8	B4		B4	B4	F/F4	A4	A3	A3	
Paper Select Priorities	9	LG		DLT	LG	A3	F/F4		DLT	
	10		F/F4				LG			
	11		LG			LG	B5			
	12			A5			B5	A5	A5	
	13			A5			A3	A5	A5	
	14			B5			B4	B5	B5	
	15			B5				B5	B5	
	Sid	eways			1		1			

Longthwise

Image Rotation

GFRXPSE

Page Reduction	Disabled
Reduction in Sub-scan Direction	Enabled
Page Separation Threshold	0.79″(20mm)
Width or Length Priority	Width

• **D** and **D** indicate that the message is split over two pages of paper with the orientation and size shown.

Limitation

- □ Paper placed in the bypass tray is not usually selected for printing a received message. However, you can use this tray if you select the bypass tray as the main paper tray using Reception with Specified Senders. ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"
- The paper size used to print a received message may be different from the size of the sent original.

🖉 Note

□ Widths that this machine can receive are A4, B4, $8^1/_2$ "×14", 11"×17", and A3. Any messages narrower than A4 or $8^1/_2$ "×14" are sent as A4 or $8^1/_2$ "×14" width with the length unchanged.

P.67 "Page Separation and Length Reduction (not available in some countries)"

P.68 "Page Reduction"

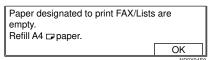
P.66 "Image Rotation"

"Just Size" Printing

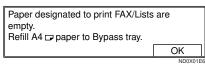
If you turn this feature on and no paper tray is stocked with paper of a suitable size to print a received document, a message will appear on the display prompting you to load paper of the required size. When you have loaded the new paper, you can then print the message.

Two messages can appear:

• Paper Cassette



• Bypass Tray



🖉 Note

□ By default this message is turned off. You can turn this message on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "*Changing the User Parameters*"

Out of Paper Display Message

If the paper tray runs out of paper, you can have a message appear on the display asking you to add more paper.

🔗 Note

□ By default this message is turned off. You can turn it on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "*Changing the User Parameters*"

Having Incoming Messages Printed on Paper From the Bypass Tray

You can have messages sent from Specified Senders printed on paper from the Bypass Tray. This is useful if you need messages printed on a size of paper not stocked in the paper cassette(s).

Limitation

□ When the optional Fax Expansion Memory is installed, you can set paper between 5.5" (148mm) and 47" (1,200mm) long in the Bypass Tray.

🖉 Note

- □ Before you can use this feature, you need to turn on Authorized Reception (Initial Setup RX settings), program the Specified Senders (Key Operator Settings) along with the Paper Tray set to "Bypass Tray". ⇒ P.158 "INITIAL SET-UP RX", P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"
- □ When you set paper sizes other than A4 landscape, B4 landscape and portrait, A3 landscape and portrait in the Bypass Tray, specify the paper size. This size should match the bypass paper size for copying or a paper jam may occur. To change the bypass paper size for copying, see the chapter titled "COPY FROM THE BYPASS TRAY" in the copy reference manual. ⇒ P.160 "To Set the Bypass Paper Size"
- □ If the specified paper size and the size of paper set in the Bypass Tray do not match, paper jams may occur and the image may be truncated.
- □ If you use this feature, Image Rotation is not possible.

4. Advanced Transmission Features

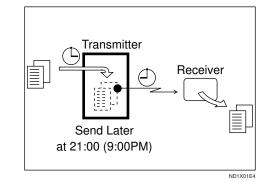
OVERVIEW

Overview

This feature describes various options that you can choose when sending a fax message. The selections you make will only apply to the current fax message.

SEND LATER

Using this feature, you can instruct the machine to delay transmission of your fax message until a later time which you specify. This allows you to take advantage of off-peak telephone charges without having to be by the machine at the time.



For ease of use, you can program the time when your phone charges become cheaper as the Economy Transmission time. \Rightarrow P.175 "Registering The Economy Transmission Time"

Then if you have a non urgent fax, just select Send Later with Economy Transmission when you scan it in. Faxes will be queued in memory and will start being sent at Economy Transmission time.

Note 🖉

- □ You can not specify a time more than 24 hours into the future.
- □ If you wish to use Economy Transmission, program the time when your phone charges get cheaper. \Rightarrow P.175 "Registering The Economy Transmission Time"
- □ This feature is only available with Memory Transmission.
- Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

Press [Mode].

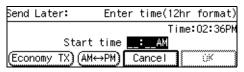
()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Send Later" function number with number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(†Prev.) (U Next) Exit

Enter the time with the number keys. To change AM/PM, press $[AM \leftarrow \rightarrow PM]$ (North America only) or press [Economy TX].



Note 🖉

- □ If the current time shown on the display is not correct, adjust it. \Rightarrow P.205 "Date/Time"
- □ When changing the time, select AM or PM before entering the time.
- □ When entering numbers smaller than 10, add a leading zero.
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ To cancel Send Later, press [Cancel] and the display will return to the Transmission Mode menu.

5 Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown on the display. A check mark is added to "Send Later".

6 Press [Exit].

⊠Transmission Mode		En	ter	numbe	er 📘
D1√Send Later	02	Conf	i der	ntial	TΧ
D3 Personal Code	04	Auto	Doe	cument	
(Throw) Vext)			Exi	t

The initial display is shown.

🔗 Note

"Send Later" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

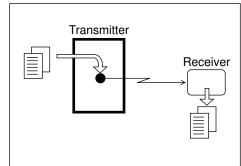
2 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

 □ You can cancel transmission of a message set up for Send Later.
 ⇒ P.101 "Canceling a Transmission"

CONFIDENTIAL TRANSMISSION

If you do not want your message to be picked up casually at the other end, use this feature. The message will be stored in memory at the other end and will not be printed until an ID is entered.



ND1X01E5

There are two types of Confidential Transmission:

Default ID

The other party can print the message by entering the Confidential ID programmed in their machine.

ID Override

Should you wish to send a confidential message to a particular person at the other end, you can specify the Confidential ID that person has to enter to see that message. Before you send the message, don't forget to tell the intended receiver the ID that must be entered to print it.

Limitation

- The destination machine must be of the same make and have the Confidential Reception feature.
- □ The destination machine must have enough memory available.

🖉 Note

- □ We recommend that you program the Confidential ID beforehand.
- □ An ID can be any 4 digit number except 0000.
- **1** Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran:	з.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

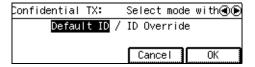
Enter the "Confidential TX" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(Threw) (Vext) Exit

4 Depending on the Confidential Transmission type, use one of the following procedures:

Default ID

● Press the ④ or ▷ key to turn Default ID on and press [OK].



The Transmission Mode menu is shown again. A check mark is added to "Confidential TX".

🖉 Note

□ To cancel the Confidential Transmission, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown on the display.

Override ID

Press the ④ or ⑤ key to turn Override ID on.

Confidential TX: Select mode with **O** Default ID / ID Override Cancel OK

2 Enter the Confidential ID (4 digit number) with the number keys and press [OK].

Confidential TX:	Enter Confidential ID
Default ID	/ ID Override
	Cancel 🤃 🕅

The Transmission Mode menu is shown again. A check mark is added to Confidential TX.

🖉 Note

To Cancel the Confidential Transmission, press [Cancel]. The Transmission Mode menu is shown on the display.

5 Press [Exit].

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D1 Send Later	02√Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(†Prev.) (U Next) Exit

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Set originals	. Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
63 DI		Dest:	0
	Mo	de 🛛	Info.

🖉 Note

"Conf.Trans" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

6 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

🖉 Note

□ For details on deleting a Confidential Transmission⇒ P.76 "CONFIDENTIAL TRANSMIS-SION"

PERSONAL CODE TRANSMISSION

Personal Codes allow you to keep track of machine usage (e.g., for billing purposes). If everybody uses a Personal Code when they use the fax machine, the codes or the names programmed for the codes will be printed in the TCR and other reports. This will help you to check up on who has been using the machine and how often. \Rightarrow P.113 "*PRINTING THE TCR*"

Limitation

 □ Personal codes may be any 8 digit number except 00000000 (00000001 through 99999999). You can program up to 20 personal codes (50 personal codes with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
 ⇒ P.164 "Registering Personal Codes"

Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode].

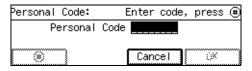
()Ready	Set originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
63 DI:_		Dest:	0
	Mod		Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Personal Code" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 📃
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(Three) (Vext) Exit

Enter a personal code (8 digit number) with the number keys.



🖉 Note

- □ If a personal code is programmed with a name, it is shown below the personal code on the display.
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ To cancel Personal Code Transmission, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown on the display.

5 Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown again. A check mark is added to "Personal Code".

6 Press [Exit].

⊠Transmission Mode		En	ter	number 💻
D1 Send Later	02	Conf	i der	ntial TX
D3∨Personal Code	04	Auto	Doe	cument
(ferev.) UNext)			Exit

The initial display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set ori	ginals.	. Enter	r fax no.
Memory Tra	ns. Perso	nal Coo	le 🛛	100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mod	te 🛛	Info.

🖉 Note

Personal Code number is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

2 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

SENDING AN AUTO DOCUMENT

If you often have to send a particular page to people (e.g. a map, a standard attachment or a set of instructions), store it as an Auto Document assigned to a Quick Dial key. Then, when you need to send that page to somebody, just press the Quick Dial key that you assigned it to instead of having to scan the whole page in again.

Preparation

You need to program an Auto Document.

You can fax an Auto Document by itself, or attach it to a normal fax message.

∰Important

□ Whenever you store or change an Auto Document, we recommend that you print the Auto Document list for reference. ⇒ P.149 "Auto Document list"

Limitation

- □ You can attach one Auto Document to each transmission.
- □ You can store up to 6 Auto Documents (up to 18 with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
 ⇒ P.147 "Registering an Auto Document"

🖉 Note

- Originals with Auto Documents are sent by Memory Transmission.
- When sending an Auto Document with another original, the Auto Document is sent first.
- Storing Auto Documents reduces the amount of free memory slightly. Unless you delete the document, free memory will not return to 100%.

- □ You can print an Auto Document or a summary of Auto Documents currently stored in memory. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"
- **1** Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

Press [Mode].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran:	s.				99%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mod	e] [Inf) .

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Auto Document" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
01 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(Three Next)) Exit

Enter the number of the "Auto Document" you want to send with the number keys then press [OK].

Auto Docum	ent:	Enter	Document No.
Doc. 💻	OTATTACH	IMENT	02MAP
	03		04
(three,)	(VNext)	Cance	I OK

🖉 Note

- □ If the list does not contain the Auto Document you want to send, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ To cancel the Auto Document, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.

E If you are sending just the Auto Document, press [♥]. If you wish to send it along with another original, press [OK].

[O1 ATTACHMENT] is attached to the 1st page of original(s). *Press ⊕ to send only this document. ⊕ _______

The Transmission Mode menu is redisplayed. A check mark is add-ed to "Auto Document".

6 Press [Exit].

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04∨Auto Document
(Mext)) Exit

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Set	origin	nals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s. Au	uto Doc					99%
163 DI				Dest		0	
		Ĺ	Mode			Info).

🖉 Note

"Auto Doc." is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

7 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

2-SIDED TRANSMISSION (DOUBLE-SIDED TRANSMISSION)

Use this feature to send 2-sided originals from the Document Feeder (AR-DF). Both sides of an original will be scanned. The front and back of the scanned original will be printed in order on separate sheets at the other end. Note that the orientation of alternate sheets may be reversed at the other end.

Limitation

The front and back of a 2-sided document are scanned in different directions. This means that when the front and back sheets of each page are printed at the other end, they may be upside-down in relation to each other.

LC 8 × 100 Top to Botton LC 8 × 100 Top to Botton LC 8 × 100 Top to Botton LC 8 × 100 Top to Top to Top to Botton Top to Botton Top to Botton Top to Botton Top to Botton Top to Botton		Original	Insert into ARDF like this	Page format
Top to Bottor	7"		<u> </u>	Top to Top
Top to Bottor	/ 11" × 1 ⁻			Top to Bottom
Top to Bottor	5" × 11" .			Top to Top
Lo Top to Botton	8			Top to Bottom
				Top to Top
تى يى	(8.5"			Top to Bottom
	5.5" >	2.5">		Top to Top
Top to Bottor			Top to Bottom	

Original Insert into ARDF like this Page format Image: state state

Sending with Image Rotation

GFWTXR1N

🖉 Note

- □ If the first page is a single-sided cover sheet, you can choose to have this page sent using single-sided transmission. The remaining pages will be sent with 2–sided Transmission feature.
- □ You can confirm whether both sides were properly scanned in with the Stamp feature. ⇒ P.52 *"Stamp"*
- **1** Set your original in the Document Feeder (ARDF) and select any scan settings you require.

Press [Mode].

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	is.			100%
€63 DI:			Dest:	0
		Mod		Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "2-Sided Trans." function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5 2-Sided Trans. 06	Book Fax
þ7 Irreg. Scan Area O8	Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the (1) or (b) key to select the first page that you want to be scanned on both sides.

2-Sided Trans.:	Select mod	e with 🖲 🕒
From 2nd sheet /		to Top heet
•Orient.)	Cancel	ОК

🖉 Note

- □ If your document contains a single-sided cover letter as the first page, select "From 2nd sheet" so that the machine scans both sides from the second page.
- Press [▶Orient.] to toggle between "Top to Top" and "Top to Bottom" (see the second display line on the right).

2-Sided Trans.:	Select mod	e with 🖲 🕞
		to Top
From 2nd sheet /	/From 1st s	heet
●Orient.)	Cancel	OK

2-Sided Trans.:	Select mod	e with 🖲 🕞
Even 2nd elegat /		to Bottom
From 2nd sheet /		neet
(•Orient.)	Cancel	OK

6 Press [OK] .

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5√2-Sided Trans. O6	
D7 Irreg. Scan Area O8	Send First
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	Exit

7 Press [Exit].

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Set origina	ls. Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns. 2-Sided T	X	100%
163 DI		Dest:	0
		Mode	Info.

🖉 Note

"2-Sided TX" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

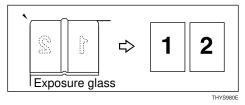
The Transmission Mode menu is redisplayed. A check mark is added to "2-Sided Trans.".

8 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

BOOK FAX

Use to send book originals from the exposure glass. Pages are scanned in the order shown below.

Note that depending on the paper sizes available on the destination machine, the message may be reduced when printed at the other end.



🖉 Note

□ You can have bound originals scanned in left page first or right page first. By default, the machine scans in the left page first but you can change this setting with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Set your original on the exposure glass and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode] .

()Ready	Set originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
163 DI:_		Dest:	0
	Moc	le]	Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Book Fax" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5 2-Sided Trans. 06	Book Fax
07 Irreg. Scan Area 08	Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

🔗 Note

- □ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [**↑Prev.**] or [**↓Next**].
- Press the ④ or ⓑ key to select the size of the original.

Book Fax:	Select size	e with 🕢 🕞
	Fi	rom Page 1
11x17ጪ /	/8½×1 <u>4 µ / 8½</u>	വ1മ
Pages	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

- To cancel this mode, press [Cancel]. The Transmission Mode menu is shown on the display.
- If you choose 11"×17", the original will be sent using Image Rotation Transmission.
- Press [▶Pages] to toggle between pages 1 and 2 (see the second display line on the right).

🖉 Note

- Select "From Page 1" to send a book original from the first page.
- □ Select "From Page 2" if you want to send a cover letter as the first page.

Book Fax:	Select size with 🖲 🕞
11×1700	§From Page 2 א‰x14ጪ / 8‰x11ጪ /
Pages	Cancel OK

6 Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Book Fax".

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5 2-Sided Trans.	
D7 Irreg. Scan Area	08 Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next	Exit

2 Press [Exit].

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Set originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s. Book Fax		100%
163 DI		Dest:	0
	Mod	e] [Info.

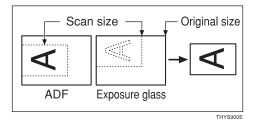
🔗 Note

Book Fax" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

8 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

CHOOSING THE AREA TO BE SCANNED YOURSELF (IRREGULAR SCAN AREA)

Usually the machine automatically detects the size of an original when it is scanned. However, you may wish to override this and choose the area to be scanned yourself.



You can either choose one of the standard paper sizes $(8^1/_2 \times 11^{"} \square \square, 8^1/_2" \times 14" \square, 11" \times 17" \square, A4 \square \square, A3 \square, B4 \square)$ or one of two custom sizes programmed in advance (Area 1 and Area 2). \Rightarrow P.16 "*Paper Size and Scanned Area*"

Although you can specify a different scan area for each page when using the exposure glass, only one size is allowed when scanning from the Document Feeder (ARDF).

1 Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode].

⊖Ready	Set or	iginals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Irreg. Scan Area" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5 2-Sided Trans. Of	6 Book Fax
ף7 Irreg. Scan Area 08	8 Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Press the **()** r **()** key to select the paper size.

Irreg. Scan Area:	Select area with 🖲 🕞
A <mark>rea 1</mark> /Area 2/8½x11(
/11×17@/A4@/A4@/A	3മ/B4മ
Status	Cancel OK

🖉 Note

- □ To see which paper sizes have already been programmed, press **[Status]**.
- □ To cancel the Irreg. Scan Area, press [Cancel].
- **5** Press [OK]. The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Irreg. Scan Area".

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
D5 2-Sided Trans. 06	
D7∨Irreg. Scan Area O8	Send First
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	Exit

6 Press [Exit].

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Se	t ori	ginals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.	Irreg	.Area			1	00%
€ <u>63</u> DI:_				Desi	t:	0	
			Mod	e	<u> </u>	Info) .]

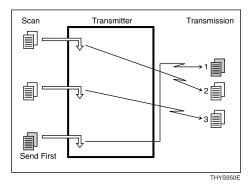
🔗 Note

"Irreg.Area" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

2 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

SEND FIRST

Documents you send with Memory Transmission are sent in the order they are scanned in. Therefore, if several messages are queued in memory, the next document you send will not be sent immediately. However, by using this feature you can have your message sent before any other queued messages.



Limitation

- This feature is not available with Immediate Transmission—if selected, the machine automatically switches to Memory Transmission.
- If there is already a message stored with this feature or a transmission is in progress, your message will be sent after that message has been transmitted.

Set your original and select any scan settings you require.

Press [Mode].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory T	rans.				100%
1 63 DI:	_		Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Send First" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
05 2-Sided Trans. 06	
07 Irreg. Scan Area 08	Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press [OK].

Send First:		
Send this file prior	to the fi	les
waiting in memory		
	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

- To cancel "Send First", press [Cancel]. The transmission Mode menu is shown on the display.
- The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Send First".

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 💻
05 2-Sided Trans. 06	
07 Irreg. Scan Area O8∘	∕Send First
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

5 Press [Exit].

The initial display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set ori	ginals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns. Send	First		100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

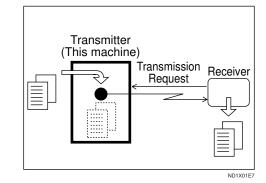
Note

"Send First" is shown on the display. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

Dial and press the [Start] key.

POLLING TRANSMISSION

Use Polling Transmission when you want to leave an original in the machine's memory for others to pick up. The message will be sent when the other party calls you up.



There are three types of Polling Transmission.

Free Polling Transmission

Anybody can poll the message from your machine. The machine sends it regardless of whether Polling ID's match.

Default ID Polling Transmission

The message will only be sent if the Polling ID of the machine trying to poll your message is the same as the Polling ID stored in your machine. Make sure that both machines' Polling IDs are identical in advance.

Override ID Polling Transmission

You must enter an Override Polling ID unique to this transmission. This ID overrides that stored in the Polling ID. The user must supply this ID when they poll your machine and if the IDs match, the message is sent. Make sure the other end knows the ID you are using in advance.

Limitation

- Polling Transmission is allowed only if the receiver's machine has the Polling Reception feature.
- Free Polling and ID Polling Transmission allow only one file to be stored in memory.
- Personal ID Polling Transmission allows a file to be stored in memory for each ID; a total of up to 200 files for varying ID's can be stored.
- Before using "Default ID Polling" and "Override ID Polling", you need to program the polling ID.
- A polling ID may be any string of four numbers (0 to 9) and characters (A to F) except 0000 and FFFF.

🖉 Note

- Usually, you can only send using ID Polling Transmission to machines of the same make that support the Polling Reception function. However, if the other party's fax machine supports the "SEP" feature, you can still carry out polling transmission with an ID.
- □ The communication fee is charged to the receiver.
- Set your original and select any scan settings you require.
- Press [Mode].

⊖Ready	Set	originals	. Enter	fax no.
Memory Trar	ns.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mo	de 🛛 🗌	Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Polling TX" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter	number 🔤
D9 Polling TX	10 Polling	RX
11 Transfer Request	12 Options	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next		Exit

🖉 Note

□ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

4 Depending on the Polling Transmission type, use one of the following procedures:

Default ID Polling Transmission

● Press the ④ or ▷ key to select "Default ID".

Polling TX:	Select mode	e with 🕢 🕞
		⊳ Use once
Default ID/Free F	Poll./ID Over	ride
(▶File)	Cancel	OK

Press [▶File] and specify whether to save the stored original or not.

Each time you press the key, the text at the middle right corner of the display toggles between "Save" and "Use once".

🖉 Note

- To delete the original immediately after transmission, select "Use once".
- □ To repeatedly send the original, select "Save".

Polling TX:	Select mode with 🖲 🕞	
	≥ Save	
Default ID/Free Poll./ID Override		
●File	Cancel OK	

Free Polling Transmission

● Press the ④ or ⊚ key to select "Free Poll.".

Polling TX:	Select mode	e with 🕢 🕞
		▶Use once
Default ID/Free Poll./ID Override		
•File	Cancel	OK

2 Press [▶File] and specify whether to save the stored original or not.

Each time you press the key, the text at the middle right corner of the display toggles between "Save" and "Use once".

🖉 Note

- To delete the original immediately after transmission, select "Use once".
- □ To repeatedly send the original, select "Save".

Polling TX:	Select mode with 🕢 🕞	
	≥ Save	
Default ID/Free Poll./ID Override		
•File	Cancel OK	

ID Override Polling Transmission

● Press the ④ or ⑤ key to select ID Override.

Polling TX:	Select mode	:with∢ি)
) Use once
Default ID/Free Poll./ID Override		
•File	Cancel	OK

2 Enter the 4 character Polling ID with letter keys/ number keys.

Polling TX:	Enter Polling ID
	⊳ Use once
Default ID/Free Po	<pre>II./ID Override</pre>
●File	Cancel 🛛 🕅



□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.

0000 and FFFF is not available.

③ Press [▶File] and specify whether to save the stored original.

Each time you press the key, the text at the middle right corner of the display toggles between "Save" and "Use once".

🖉 Note

- To delete the original immediately after transmission, select "Use once".
- □ To repeatedly send the original, select "Save".

Polling TX:	Enter Polling ID
	≫ Save
Default ID/Free Pol	./ID Override
●File	Cancel OK

5 Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Polling TX".

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter	number 🔤
D9√Polling TX	10 Polling	RX
11 Transfer Request	12 Options	
(†Prev.) (↓Next)		Exit

🖉 Note

□ To cancel the Polling Transmission, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.

6 Press [Exit].

The initial display is shown.

()Ready	Set originals.	Press	Start
Memory Trans.	Polling TX		100%
163 DI : XXXXX	XXXXXXX		
	Mode	I	nfo.

Note

Polling TX" is displayed. If you set up other advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is displayed.

2 Press the **[Start]** key.

Polling Transmission Clear Report

This report allows you to verify whether Polling Transmission has taken place.

Limitation

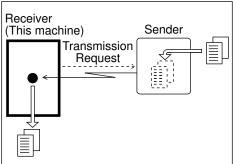
□ This report is not printed if the User Parameters are set to allow the stored originals to be repeatedly sent (Save). ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

🖉 Note

- □ This report is turned on by default. You can turn it off if you wish. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ By default, a portion of the sent image is printed on the report. You can turn this off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ You can also check the result of a Polling Transmission with the TCR.

POLLING RECEPTION

Use this function if you want to poll a message from another terminal. You can also poll documents from many terminals with only one operation (use Groups and Keystroke Programs to fully exploit this feature).



ND1X01E8

There are two types of Polling Reception.

 Default ID Polling Reception (Free Polling Reception)

Use this method for Free Polling or Default ID Polling. If the Polling ID is programmed in your machine, any messages waiting in the transmitting machine with the same ID are received. If the other machine does not have any messages waiting with the same Polling ID, any messages that do not require ID are received (Free Polling).

Override ID Polling Reception

You must enter an Override Polling ID unique to this transmission. This ID overrides that stored in the Polling ID.

Your machine will receive any messages waiting in the transmitting machine with matching ID's. If no ID's match, any messages that do not require ID are received (Free Polling).

Limitation

- Polling Reception requires that the other machine can perform Polling Transmission.
- To receive a message sent by any Default ID Polling Transmission or Override ID Polling Transmission, it is necessary to specify the same polling ID as the sender's.
- □ A Polling ID may be any four numbers (0 to 9) and characters (A to F) except 0000 and FFFF.

🖉 Note

Usually, you can only receive documents with a polling ID from machines of the same make that support the polling function. However, if the other party's fax machine supports Polling Transmission and the "SEP" function, you can still receive using Polling Reception from another party's fax machine that has a stored IDs.

1 Press [Mode].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trans	s.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

2 Enter the "Polling RX" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode		Enter	number	H
D9 Polling TX	10	Polling	RX	
11 Transfer Request	12	Options		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)			Exit	

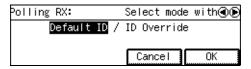
🖉 Note

□ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Depending which method you are using, choose one of the following procedures:

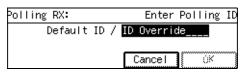
Default ID Polling Reception

Press the (1) or (b) key to select the Default ID.



ID Override Polling Reception

Press the (1) or (b) key to select the Override ID.



2 Enter a polling ID (4 characters) with the number keys and the letter (A–F).

Note 🖉

- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- 0000 and FFFF is not available.

Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Polling RX".

1	Fransmission Mode	Enter	number	
	Polling TX	10∽Polling	RX	
11	Transfer Request	12 Options		
\square	Prev.)(UNext))	Exit	

Solution Note

□ To cancel the Polling Reception, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.

5 Press [Exit].

The following display is shown.

()Ready	Enter no. Press Start
Polling RX	100%
163 DI	Dest: O
	Mode Info.

🖉 Note

 \square "Polling RX" is displayed.

6 Dial and press the **[Start]** key.

Polling Reserve Report

This report is printed after Polling Reception has been set up.

🖉 Note

□ By default this report is turned off. Turn it on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Polling Result Report

This report is printed after a Polling Reception has been completed and shows the result of the Polling Reception.

🔗 Note

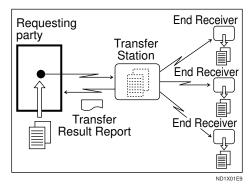
- □ You can also check the result of a Polling Reception with the TCR.
- □ By default this report is turned on. Turn it off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

TRANSFER REQUEST

Transfer Request allows fax machines that have this feature to automatically distribute incoming messages onto multiple fax destinations. This feature helps you save costs when you send the same message to more than one place in a distant area, and saves time since many messages can be sent in a single operation.

The diagram below may make the concept clearer.

The Transfer Stations you specify must be machines of the same make as this machine and have the Transfer Station function.



Preparation

Before you can use this feature you must program the Polling ID and Transfer Report. \Rightarrow P.176 "ID Code", P.198 "Transfer Report"

Polling ID's of the requesting party (this machine) and Transfer Stations must be identical.

The following terminology is used in this section.

Requesting Party

The machine where the message originates from, i.e. the machine making a Transfer Request (in this section, this machine).

Transfer Station

The machine that forwards the incoming message to another destination, i.e. the machine that receives the Transfer Request.

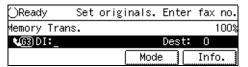
End Receiver

The final destination of the message, i.e. the machine that the Transfer Station sends to. End Receivers must be programmed into Quick Dials, Speed Dials or Groups in the Transfer Station.

Limitation

- You can specify up to 99 Transfer Stations in a Transfer Request. However, you can only specify up to 50 Transfer Stations from the number keys.
- □ You can have up to 30 End Receivers per Transfer Station. If you specify a Transfer Station Group, the Group counts as a single receiver.
- The combined total of End Receivers and Transfer Stations you specify with the number keys cannot exceed 99.
- **1** Set an original and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode].



The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Transfer Request" function number with the number keys.

∭Transmission Mode	Enter	number 📃
D9 Polling TX	10 Polling	RX
11 Transfer Request	12 Options	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If the appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- 4 Enter a Transfer Stations and press [Recv. Stn].

Trans.Req.:	Select Transfer Stn
Transf.Stn 1	€63) DI: SADOO5 TRONT BRAN~
	Cancel Recv.Stn

🖉 Note

- Enter the fax numbers of the Transfer Stations with either Quick Dials, Speed Dials or the number keys.
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ To cancel the Transfer Request, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown again.

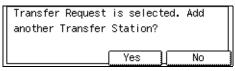
5 Enter one or more End Receivers.

Trans.Req.:	Select Receive Stn		
Transf.Stn 1	SRD005 TRONT BRAN~		
Recv.Stn 🔤	Dest: O		
	Cancel 🛛 🖉		

🖉 Note

□ You cannot enter the numbers of the End Receivers directly. The numbers must be stored in Quick Dials, Speed Dials or Groups in the Transfer Station(s). To specify an End Receiver, use the special format described in. ⇒ P.95 "Specifying an End Receiver"

- □ Press **[Add RcvStn]** if you wish enter more End Receivers.
- Press the ④ or ⑤ key to see the End Receivers already entered. You can select an End Receiver from this list and cancel it by pressing the [Clear/Stop] key.
- □ To cancel the Transfer Request, press [Cancel].
- When you have specified all the End Receivers, press [OK].
- If you want to enter an additional Transfer Station, press [Yes] and repeat steps 4 to 6.



If you press **[No]**, the Transmission Mode menu is shown and a check mark is added to "Transfer Request".

⊠Transmission Mode		Enter	number	
D9 Polling TX		Polling	RX	
11√Transfer Request	12	Options		
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)			Exit	

Press [Exit].

The following display is shown.

()Ready	En	ter	no.	Pr	ess	Start
Memory Trans. 1	frans.	Req.				100%
Transf.Str	n: 1 I	Recv	. S	tn:	1	
	ĺ	Мо	de][١١	nfo.

🔗 Note

The numbers of Transfer Stations and End Receivers are displayed.

Press the [Start] key.

Specifying an End Receiver

When you make a Transfer Request, you must specify the final destinations (End Receivers) for your message.

You cannot enter the numbers of the End Receivers directly. Instead, enter a simple code that describes where the numbers are stored in the Transfer Station (in Quick Dials, Speed Dials or Groups).

The numbers must first have been stored in Quick Dials, Speed Dials or Groups in the Transfer Station(s).

Quick Dial

Enter **[#]** followed by the number (2 digits) of the Quick Dial where the End Receiver is stored. For example, to choose the number stored in Quick Dial 01 in the Transfer Station, enter: **[#][0][1]**

Speed Dial

Enter **[#]**, **[X]** followed by the Speed Dial code (2 or 3 digits). For example, to choose the number stored in Speed Dial 12 in the Transfer Station, enter: **[#][X] [1][2]**

Group Dial

Enter **[#]**, **[★]**, **[★]** followed by the Group number (2 digits). For example, to choose the number stored in Group 04 in the Transfer Station, enter: **[#][★][★][0] [4]**

TRANSMISSION OPTIONS

This section describes various features that you can switch on and off for any particular transmission by following the procedure at the end of this section.

In addition, if you frequently use a certain configuration of options, you can change the default home position (on or off) of each option with the User Parameters. \Rightarrow P.206 "*Changing the User Parameters*"

TTI (Transmit Terminal Identification) Print

.

By default, the machine adds your TTI identification to each message you send so it appears on the printed fax at the other end.

You can store two TTI indications: "TTI 1" and "TTI 2".

For example, if you store your department name in one and your organization name in the other, you could use the first when sending internal faxes and the second for external faxes.

You can change your TTI with the Key Operator Settings. \Rightarrow P.169 "*RTI/TTI*"

Note

□ You can switch this feature off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 *"Changing the User Parameters"*

V Label Insertion

With this feature you can have the receiver's name printed on the message when it is received at the other end. The name will be printed at the top of the page and will be preceded by "To".

🖉 Note

- If you select Label Insertion, the label might be printed over a portion of the image when received at the other end.
- □ Program the receiver's name and number in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial then Label Insertion turned on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Create Margin Transmission

Using this feature your message is sent at a reduced size (93%) with a blank margin on the left.

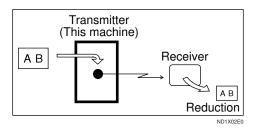
Limitation

.

- □ This feature is not available at Immediate Transmission.
- □ Image Rotation is not available with this feature.

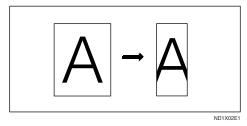
Ö Auto Reduction

By default, if the receiver's paper is smaller than the paper you are sending on, the message is automatically reduced to fit onto the paper available at the other end.



∰Important

□ If you turn this feature off, the scale of the original is maintained and some parts of the image may be lost when printed at the other end.



🖉 Note

□ You can switch this feature on and off with the User Parameters. The default setting is on. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Closed Network

If you turn this feature on, transmission will only take place if the destination's Polling ID is the same as yours. This feature can stop you from accidentally sending information to the wrong place (you need to co-ordinate Polling ID's with the other party).

🖉 Note

□ You can switch this feature on and off with the User Parameters. The default setting is off. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Selecting Transmission Options for a Single Transmission

Set the original and select any scan settings you require.

2 Press [Mode].

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
63 DI :			Dest:	0
		Mode	•] [Info.

The Transmission Mode menu appears.

Enter the "Options" function number with the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Ent	er number 💻
D9 Polling TX	10 Polli	ng RX
11 Transfer Request	12 Optio	ns
(†Prev.) (↓Next)		Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "Options" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the (a) or (b) key to switch TTI Print on or off.

Options:	Select	mode	wi th 🕢 🕞
TTI Print:	0n /	Off	1/5
(Three) (UNext)	[OK

🖉 Note

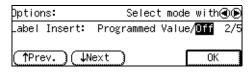
□ The default setting is on.

U If you want to set another option, press [↓Next].

🖉 Note

 \Box To finish, go to step **\Box**.

Press the (a) or (b) key to switch Label Insertion on or off.



🖉 Note

- \Box The default setting is off.
- □ To cancel the changes, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.
- If you want to set another option, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

🖉 Note

- \Box To finish, go to step **\Box**.
- Press the (a) or (b) key to turn [Creat Margin Trans.] on or off.

Options:	Select mode	: with 🕢 🕞
Create Margin	Trans.: On / <mark>Off</mark>	3/5
(†Prev.)	ext)	OK

If you want to set another option, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

🖉 Note

 \Box To finish, go to step **\square**.

Press the (a) or (b) key to switch Auto Reduction on or off.

Options:	Select mode with 🖲 🖲)
Auto Reduction:	On / Off 4/!	5
(Auto Reduce to fi	t receiver's paper)	
(↑Prev.)(↓Next) ОК	

🖉 Note

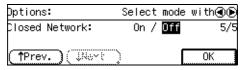
- □ The default setting is on.
- To cancel the setting, press [Cancel]. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.

If you want to set another option, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

🖉 Note

 \Box To finish, go to step **\Box**.

Press the ④ or ▷ key to switch Closed Network on or off.



🖉 Note

 \Box The default setting is off.

□ To cancel the changes, press **[Cancel]**. The Transmission Mode menu is shown.

If you want to set another option, press [↑Prev.].

🖉 Note

 \Box To finish, go to step **\Box**.

Press [OK].

The Transmission Mode menu is shown. A check mark is added to "Options".

Dress [Exit].

∭ T	ransmission Mode		Enter	number	
Þ9	Polling TX	10	Polling	RX	
	Transfer Request	12	∕Options		
(1	`Prev.)(↓Next)			Exit	

The initial display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set originals.	. Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns. Options		100%
63 DI:_		Dest:	0
	Mod	de 🛛	Info.

🖉 Note

"Options" is shown. If you set up another advanced transmission function (except Polling Reception), "Others" is shown.

Dial and press the [Start] key.

5. Communication Information

CHECKING AND CANCELING TRANSMISSION FILES

Transmission files are originals that have been stored in memory and are awaiting transmission. The features that produce transmission files are Memory Transmission, Confidential Transmission, Transfer Request, Polling Reception and Polling Transmission. These features are described in detail elsewhere in this document.

This section describes how you can:

- Delete a file (cancel transmission)
- Print a file ^{*1}
- Check the destination(s) and options selected
- Alter when a file will be sent
- Resend a file
- Change destinations
- Delete destinations
- Add destinations
- ^{*1} This does not apply to Polling Reception or Confidential Transmission.

Limitation

- If you cancel a file being sent, the communication is immediately stopped and the file is canceled. A page which has already been sent cannot be canceled.
- You cannot change the start time add/delete a destination while a file is being sent.

Canceling a Transmission

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.				99%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info	þ.

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Check/Cancel TX Files" function number with the number keys.

📓 Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(Throw) (UNext)	Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If "Check/Cancel TX Files" is not shown, press [**↑Prev.**] or [↓**N**-**ext**].
- **B** Press the **(a)** or **(b)** key until the file you want to delete is shown and press [Delete].

TX Files Status:	④Prev. ●Next
16/02:44PM MemoryTX	▶Standby
€3 DI:0987654321	Dest: 1 Pg(s) 1
Delete Print	Check Exit

Press [Yes].

Cancel transmission and delete this	٦
file?	
€63DI:PARIS BRA~ Dest: O Pg(s) O	
No Yes	

The file is erased.

5 Press [Exit].

TX Files Status:	●Pre	ev. 🕞Nex
ļ		
Delete 🛛 Print	l Check [Exit

🖉 Note

□ To delete another file, repeat steps **E** and **C**.

O Press [Exit].

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	•
2 Print TX File list	
(Three) (Inext	Exit

The initial display is shown.

Printing a File

If you wish to check the contents of a fax that is stored in memory and has not been sent yet, use this procedure to print it out.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				99%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mod	e [Inf).)

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Check/Cancel TX Files" function number with the number keys.

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(frow) (Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "Check/Cancel TX Files" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓N-ext].

Press the () or () key until the file you want to print is shown and press [Print].

TX Files Status:	④Prev. ●Next
16/02:44PM MemoryTX	▶Standby
€3 DI:0987654321	Dest: 1 Pg(s) 1
Delete Print	Check Exit

Press the [Start] key.

To print	selected	file,	press	Start
key.				
Cancel				

The file is printed.

🖉 Note

 Press [Cancel] to stop printing the file and return to the step display.

D Press [Exit].

TX Files Status:	④Prev. ●Next
16/02:44PM MemoryTX	▶Standby
€63 DI:0987654321	Dest: 1 Pg(s) 1
Delete Print	Check Exit

The Information menu is shown again.

6 Press [Exit] twice.

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(Affred) (Next)	Exit

Checking and Editing a File

Use this procedure to check or edit destination(s), check options selected or alter the transmission time.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tr	ans.				99%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info) .]

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Check/Cancel TX Files" function number with the number keys.

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(frow) (JNext)	Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If "Check/Cancel TX Files" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓N-ext].
- Press the () or () key until the file you want to check or edit is shown. Then press [Check].

	X Files S			€Pre	ev. 🕑	Nex
	16/02:44F	M MemoryT>	< •	Star	ndby	
	🛾 🕼 🖓 🕹 🕹	987654321	Dest:	1 F	Pg(s)	1
Í	Delete	Print	Check		Exi	it

🖉 Note

- □ If you wish to check only the transmission status, press **[Exit]** to return to standby mode.
- **4** Depending on the setting you want to check or change, use one of the following procedures.

Checking Destinations (Destination List)

• Enter the "Destination List" number with the number keys.

Check/Change:	Enter number
1 Destination List	
2 Change Start Time(04:0)7PM)
β Change Dest.	Exit

The total number of destinations and the fax number or each destination's name is shown.

Destination List:	Dest: 1
€G3)DI:PARIS BRA~	
	Exit

🖉 Note

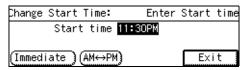
□ To see hidden destinations, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Changing the Transmission Time

Enter the "Change Start Time" number with the number keys.



2 Enter the transmission time (4 digits) with the number keys.



Use 24-hour or 12-hour format depending on your area. For 12-hour format, press **[AM \leftrightarrow PM]** to switch between AM and PM.

🖉 Note

- □ You can not specify a start time more than 24 hours into the future.
- When changing the time, select AM or PM before entering the time.
- □ To start transmission immediately, press **[Immediate]**. If memory contains other files queued for transmission, those files are sent first.

Re-sending a File

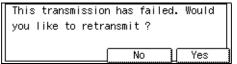
This function is valid when the machine is set up with the User Parameters to save messages that could not be sent in memory.

If you select the failed transmission file, you can resend it. This feature allows you to transmit a fax message again. These files will be kept for either up to 24 or 72 hours depending on how you program this feature. \Rightarrow P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

• Enter the "Retransmit" number with the number keys.

Check/Change:	Enter number
1 Destination List	
2 Retransmit	
β Change Dest.	Exit

Press [Yes].



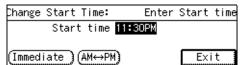
🖉 Note

□ If you do not want to send the file, press **[No]**.

3 Enter the "Change Start Time" number with the number keys.

Check/Change:	Enter number
1 Destination List	
2 Change Start Time(**:*	*)
B Change Dest.	Exit

4 Enter the start time with the number keys and press [Exit].



Use 24-hour or 12-hour format depending on your area. For 12-hour format, press $[AM \leftrightarrow PM]$ to switch AM and PM (North America only).

🖉 Note

- You can not specify a start time more than 24 hours into the future.
- When changing the time, select AM or PM before entering the time.
- □ To start transmission immediately, press **[Immediate]**. If memory contains other files queued for transmission, those files are sent first.

Changing a Destination

You can delete or add destinations.

• Enter the "Change Dest." number with the number keys.

Check/Change:	Enter	number
1 Destination List		
2 Change Start Time(04:0	7PM)	
3 Change Dest.		Exit

2 Change the destination.

Change Dest.	: ,	Add/chan	ge des	tina	tion
					1/1
13 01:[13]	PARIS	BRANCH	Dest:	1	
Add				Exi	t

🖉 Note

- □ To cancel a destination, press the ④ or ⑤ key until the destination you want to cancel is shown and press the [Clear/ Stop] key.
- □ To add a destination, press **[Add]** and enter the fax number with the number keys. Destinations can be specified only by using the number keys. The destination is added to the end of the list.
- □ If you change a destination of a file that is automatically being dialed or awaiting redial, redial is canceled so you will need to resend that file. ⇒ P.104 "*Re-sending a File*"

5 Press [Exit].

6 Press [Exit].

٦ł	neck/Change:	Enter	number _
	Destination List		
Þ.	Change Start Time(04:0	D7PM)	
β.	Change Dest.		Exit

Press [Exit].

TX Files Status:	∢Prev. ⊛Next
16/02:44PM MemoryTX	▶Standby
€G3) DI:0987654321	Dest: 1 Pg(s) 1
	Check Exit

The Information menu is shown.

B Press [Exit].

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(frev.) (J Next)	Exit

PRINTING A LIST OF FILES IN MEMORY (PRINT TX FILE LIST)

Print this list if you wish to find out which files are stored in memory and what their file numbers are. Knowing the file number can be useful (e.g. when erasing files).

🖉 Note

□ The contents of an original stored in memory can also be printed. ⇒ P.102 "Printing a File"

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.				99%
63DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode	e] [Info).

The Information menu is displayed.

2 Enter the "Print TX File list " function number with the number keys.

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(↑Prov.) (↓Next)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "Print TX File list " is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the [Start] key.

To print	ТΧ	File	List,	press	Start
key.					
Cancel					

The transmission file list is printed. When the printing is completed, the Information menu is shown.

🖉 Note

□ Press **[Cancel]** to stop printing the file list and return to the Information Menu display.

Press [Exit].

■Information	Enter number
1 Check/Cancel TX Files	
2 Print TX File list	
(Thread Next)	Exit

CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION RESULT (TX FILE STATUS)

If you wish to find out whether a file was sent successfully, you don't have to always print the TCR. With this function you can browse through the last 50 completed transmissions on the display.

Limitation

- Only the last 50 communications are shown. Earlier transmissions are not available.
- □ If a transmission is completed while you are using this function, the result will not be shown until you exit TX File Status and start it again.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				99%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "TX Status" function number with the number keys.

⊠Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(↑Prev.)(↓Next) Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If "TX Status" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- E Press [\uparrow Prev.] or [\downarrow Next] to scroll through the list.

TX Status:	Sep.30.	03:46PM
Sep.30. 03:46PM 2262314		s) Error
Sep.30. 11:49AM NEW YOR	≻ 5Pg(:	s) Done
(Three Next)		0K

The results are shown two at a time with the most recent above.

Press [OK].

The initial display is shown.

5 Press [Exit].

CHECKING THE RECEPTION RESULT (RX FILE STATUS)

This function lets you check up on the last 50 messages received without having to print the TCR. You can browse through the received messages on the display.

Limitation

- Only the last 50 communications are displayed. Earlier messages are not available.
- If a message is received while you are using this function, the result will not be shown until you exit RX File Status and start it again.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set or	iginals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e [Info.

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "RX Status" function number with the number keys.

∭ Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(↑Prev.)(↓Next	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "RX Status" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

E Press [\uparrow Prev.] or [\downarrow Next] to scroll through the messages.

RX Status:	Sep.30.	03:54PM
Sep.30. 02:37PM TOKYO B^		:) Done
Sep.30. 02:34PM LONDON ~	· 2Pg(s) Error
(Three) (Inext	[OK 🛔

The results are shown two at a time with the most recent above.

Press [OK].

The initial display is shown.

5 Press [Exit].

PRINTING A CONFIDENTIAL MESSAGE

This feature is designed to prevent messages being picked up casually by anyone when they are received. If someone sends you a message using Confidential Transmission, it is stored in memory and not automatically printed. To print the message you have to enter the Confidential ID code. When your machine has received a confidential message, the **Confidential File** indicator lights.

Preparation

Before using this function, program your Confidential ID. \Rightarrow P.176 "ID Code"

∰Important

□ If the Main Power switch is off more than an hour, all Confidential Messages are deleted. In such a case, use the Power Failure Report to identify which messages have been lost. ⇒ P.122 "WHEN POW-ER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"

Limitation

You must program the Confidential ID for Confidential Reception to work.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Trans	з.				99%
€ <u>63</u> DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info	þ.

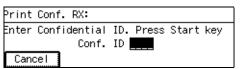
The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Print Conf. RX" function number with the number keys.

⊠Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(†Prev.) (Vext) Exit

🖉 Note

- □ If "Print Conf. RX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the Confidential ID (4 digit number) with the number keys.

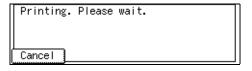


🖉 Note

- □ If you receive a fax by Confidential ID Override Reception, enter the override Confidential ID.
- You need to obtain the override Confidential ID from the sender.

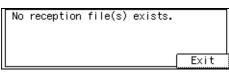
Press the [Start] key.

The received messages are printed. When printing has finished, the Information menu is shown.



🖉 Note

□ If no Confidential Messages have been received, the message "No reception file(s) exists." is shown. Press **[OK]**.



□ If the Confidential IDs or Personal Confidential IDs do not match, the message "No file(s) exist for this Confidential ID." is displayed. Press **[OK]** to cancel the operation, check the Confidential ID or Personal Confidential ID with the other party and try again.

No file(s) exist for this Confidential ID. Exit

5 Press [Exit].

⊠Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(↑Prev.) (↓Next) Exit

The initial display is shown.

Confidential File Report

By default, this report is printed whenever your machine receives a Confidential Message.

🖉 Note

□ You can turn this report off with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 *"Changing the User Parameters"*

PRINTING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMORY LOCK

This is a security feature designed to prevent unauthorized users from reading your messages. If Memory Lock is switched on, all received messages are stored in memory and are not automatically printed. To print the messages, you have to enter the Memory Lock ID code. When your machine has received a message with Memory Lock, the **Confidential File** indicator blinks.

Preparation

Before you start, program your Memory Lock ID. \Rightarrow P.176 "ID Code"

🖉 Note

- Messages received by Polling Reception are automatically printed even if this feature is switched on.
- □ If the Main Power switch is turned off for more than an hour, all messages protected by Memory Lock will be deleted. In such a case, the Power Failure Report will be printed so you can confirm which messages have been lost. ⇒ P.122 "WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS"
- □ Memory Lock is switched off by default. Turn it on with the User Parameters. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ You can also apply Memory Lock to messages that come only from certain senders. ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"

1 Make sure that the Confidential File indicator blinks. Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er fa	ax no.
Memory Tran	is.				99%
463 DI:_			Dest	: ()
		Mod	e	Ir	nfo.

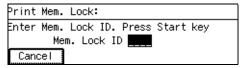
The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Print Mem. Lock" function number with the number keys.

∭ Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(↑Prev.) (↓Next) Exit

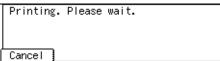
🖉 Note

- □ If "Print Mem. Lock" is not shown on the display, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the Memory Lock ID (4 digit number).



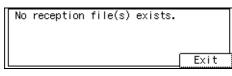
Press the [Start] key.

The received messages are printed. When the printing is completed, the Information menu is shown.



🖉 Note

□ If no messages have been received, while Memory Lock is switched on, the message "No reception file(s) exists." is shown. Press **[OK]**.



 If the Memory Lock ID does not match, the message "Wrong Memory Lock ID." is shown.
 Press [OK] and retry after checking the Memory Lock ID.

Wrong	Memory	Lock	ID.	
				Exit

5 Press [Exit].

⊠Information	Enter number
3 TX Status	4 RX Status
5 Print Conf. RX	6 Print Mem. Lock
(↑Prev.) (↓Next	Exit

PRINTING THE TCR

The TCR contains information about the last 50 communications made by your machine. It is printed automatically after every 50 communications (receptions+transmissions).

You can also print a copy of the TCR at any time by following the procedure below.

🖉 Note

- □ The sender's name column of the TCR is useful when you need to register a special sender.
- □ If you do not want the TCR printed, you can turn it off. ⇒ P.206 *"Changing the User Parameters"*

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set (originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ins.			1	00%
163 DI :			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info	•

The Information menu is shown.

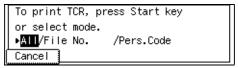
2 Enter the "Print TCR" function number with the number keys.

⊠Information	Enter number
7 Print TCR 8	3 Memory Status
(Prev.)	Exit

🖉 Note

□ If "Print TCR" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the (a) or (b) key to select the format you want to print.



- Select "All" to print the last communications.
- Select "File No." to print the information for each file then enter a 4 digit file number with the number keys.
- Select "Pers. Code" to print the information for files of each personal code then enter a Personal Code (8 digit number) with the number keys.
- Press **[Cancel]** to return to the Information menu.

Press the [Start] key.

The TCR is printed.

5 Press [Exit].

⊠Information	Enter number
7 Print TCR	8 Memory Status
(↑Prev.)(UNovt	Exit

DISPLAYING THE MEMORY STATUS

Use this function to display a summary of current memory usage. Items shown are the percentage of free memory space, the number of received confidential messages, the number of files to be sent, and the number of received messages to be printed.

Press [Info.].

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				99%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

The Information menu is shown.

2 Enter the "Memory Status" function number with the number keys.

⊠Information	Enter number
7 Print TCR ដ	8 Memory Status
(↑Prev.)(↓₩৬~t)	Exit

🖉 Note

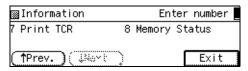
- □ If "Memory Status" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- E The usage is displayed. When you have finished, press [OK].

Memory Status:		Memory 99%
Confidential RX	2 file(s) Others
TX Files	32 file(s)
RX Files to print	1 file(s) ок

🖉 Note

- □ If "Others" is displayed, it means that one or more Auto Documents have been stored. ⇒ P.147 "Registering an Auto Document"
- Memory can hold up to about 160 pages (up to about 400 pages with optional Expansion Memory installed/up to about 2,400 pages with both the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit and optional Expansion Memory installed).

Press [Exit].



6. Troubleshooting

WHEN TONER RUNS OUT

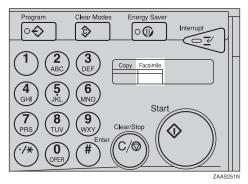
When the machine has run out of toner the symbol appears on the display. Note that even if there is no toner left you can still send fax message.

∰Important

If you continue receiving and sending faxes after toner runs out, communication will not be possible after 100 communications (900 with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).

Limitation

- The Memory Storage Report, Polling Reserve Report and Confidential File Report are not printed.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.



🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press [Exit].

The error display closes.

⇒ P.24 "MEMORY TRANSMIS-SION", P.32 "IMMEDIATE TRANSMISSION"

ERROR MESSAGES AND THEIR MEANINGS

If there is an error, one of the following messages may appear on the display. It might just flash up briefly, so if you are watching for errors, stay by the machine and check the display.

Message	Problem and Solution
Clear Misfeed(s)	Original misfeed
Remove originals from the Document	Remove originals from Document Feeder.
Feeder.	Set any pages of the original that were not scanned and send again.
Reset originals and press Start.	Original jammed during Memory Trans- mission. Reset originals that haven't been scanned.
Error. Transmission has been cancelled.	A document jam occurred during Imme- diate Transmission. Press [OK] and resend the page which has been not sent.
	An error occurred during Immediate Transmission. Press [OK] and re-send the original.
	Note
	 There may be a problem with the machine or the telephone line (e.g. noise or cross talk). If the error re-occurs frequently, contact your service representative.
Cannot detect original size. Reset original(s) and press Start key.	The machine failed to detect the size of the original. Press the ④ or ⑤ key to select the size and press the [Start] key three times.
<fax> Personal Code Access. Please enter your Personal Code.</fax>	Personal Codes Access is switched on. You need to enter a previously pro- grammed 8 digit ID code. For more infor- mation, see P.164 " <i>Personal Codes</i> ".
Service call	There is a problem with the fax function.
Functional problem with the fax. Please contact your service representative.	Contact your service representative and tell the code number shown in the dis- play. The copier function will still work normally.
Memory is full. Cannot store additional originals. (Stored original(s) will be trans- mitted.)	If you press [OK] , the machine returns to the standby mode and start transmitting pages which has been scanned.

SOLVING PROBLEMS

This table lists some common problems and	their solutions.
---	------------------

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Image background appears dirty when received at the other end.	Adjust the scan density.	P.38 "Image Density (Con- trast)"
Printed or sent image con- tains spots.	The Document Feeder (AR- DF) or exposure glass is dirty. Clean them. See the Copy Reference manual.	
	Make sure that ink or eras- er is dry before setting the original.	
Received image is too light.	Request the sender to in- crease the image density.	
	When using moist, rough or processed paper, the printed image may be part- ly invisible. Only use rec- ommended paper.	P.15 "ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF ORIGINALS"
	When \checkmark is blinking, toner is beginning to run out. Re- place the toner cartridge soon. \Rightarrow See the Copy Ref- erencemanual.	
Message appears blank at the other end.	The original was set upside down. Set it properly.	P.19 "HOW TO SET AN ORIGINAL"
You want to cancel a Mem- ory Transmission.	If the original is being stored, press the [Clear / Stop] key.	P.30 "CANCELING A MEMORY TRANSMIS- SION"
	If the original is being sent, use "Check/Cancel TX Files" in the Information menu.	P.101 "CHECKING AND CANCELING TRANSMIS- SION FILES"
You want to cancel an Im- mediate Transmission.	Press the [Clear/Stop] key.	P.36 "CANCELING AN IM- MEDIATE TRANSMIS- SION"

Problem	Solution	Refer to
You cannot add any desti- nation in Group though it does not reach the maxi- mum number.	100 destinations have been programmed with the number keys (1,000 with optional Fax Function Up- grade Unit). Program more numbers with Quick Dials or Speed Dials.	⇒ P.44 "Number Keys", P.125 "Registering Quick Di- als", P.138 "Registering Speed Dials", P.131 "Regis- tering Groups"

If you cannot solve the problem, please contact your service representative. Contact information is listed under "FCC Requirements" on the inside back cover of the Copy Reference manual.

INDICATORS

When the Receive File Indicator is Lit

If the **Receive File** indicator is lit, a message has been received but could not be printed for some reason. The message was stored in memory (Substitute Reception). When you solve the problem, the message will be automatically printed out. The table below lists some problems that could have caused Substitute Reception to take place and their solutions.

Why Substitute Recep- tion Occurred	Indication/Status	Solution
Paper has run out	and/or Facsimile Er- ror indicator is lit red.	Add paper. ⇒See "Loading Paper" in the Copy Reference manual.
Toner is empty	لھُا is lit	Replace the toner cartridge. ⇒See "Adding Toner" in the Copy Reference manual.
Paper is jammed	8 ∿ is lit	Remove the jammed paper. ⇒See "Clearing Misfeeds" in the Copy Reference manual.
Cover is open	The message "Doors/ Covers open" appears.	Close the cover. A cover other than the Document Feeder (ARDF) or front cover is open.
Machine is busy print- ing with another func- tion	The machine is printing with another function.	The message will be printed after the current job finishes automati- cally.
Output Tray is full.	The Output Tray is full. Remove paper.	Remove paper from the Output Tray.

When [1] (the Confidential File Indicator) is Lit or Blinking

If this indicator is lit, a message has been received into memory with Confidential Reception. You need to print it out manually. \Rightarrow P.109 "*PRINTING A CON-FIDENTIAL MESSAGE*"

The Confidential Reception indicator blinks when a message has been received with the Memory Lock feature. \Rightarrow P.111 "*PRINTING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMORY LOCK*"

When the Facsimile Error Indicator is Lit in Red

If this indicator is lit, refer to the table below and take the appropriate action.

Problem	Solution
Paper has run out.	Add paper. ⇒See the Loading Paper in the Copy Ref- erence manual.
The paper output tray is full.	Remove the paper from the tray.
The machine is in RDS (Remote Diagnos- tic System) mode.	Wait with the Main Power switch on. Ma- chine will go to the standby mode after it exits from the RDS mode.
A facsimile error has occurred.	The facsimile has a problem. Contact a service representative. The copier will still function normally.

WHEN AN ERROR REPORT IS PRINTED

An error report is printed when a message could not be successfully sent or received.

Possible causes include a problem with your machine or the receiver's, noise on the telephone line etc. If an error occurs during transmission, re-send the original. If an error occurs during reception, ask the sender to re-send the message.

🖉 Note

- □ If the error happens frequently, contact your service representative.
- □ The "Page" column gives the total number of pages. The "Page Not Sent" column gives the number of pages that were not sent or received successfully.

WHEN POWER IS TURNED OFF OR FAILS

Even if the **Main Power** switch is turned off, the contents of the machine's memory (programmed numbers etc.) will not be lost. However, if power is lost for about 1 hour through the **Main Power** switch being turned off, a power cut or the power cable being removed, contents in the Fax memory will be lost. Lost items will include any fax messages stored in memory using Memory Transmission or Reception.

If a file has been deleted from memory, a Power Failure Report is automatically printed as soon as power is restored. This report can be used to identify lost files. If an original stored for Memory Transmission was lost, re-send it. If a message received by Memory Reception or Substitute Reception was lost, ask the sender to re-send it. If an Auto Document was lost, you will need to store it in memory again.

∰Important

- □ Make sure that 100% is shown on the display before you unplug the machine. If a lower value is shown, some data is currently stored in memory.
- □ Right after a power failure, the internal battery needs to be sufficiently recharged to guard against future data loss. Please keep the machine plugged in and the **Main Power** switch on for about 24 hours after the power loss occurs.

7. Facsimile User Tools

ACCESSING THE USER TOOLS

The User Tools allow you to program the machine with your identification, store frequently used numbers and settings, and customize the default settings to match your needs.

So you can find the User Tool you want quickly and easily, they are grouped by function:

Register/Delete

Use to program or delete: Quick Dials, Groups, Speed Dial, Keystroke Programs, Auto Documents, Irregular scan Area

Reports/Lists

Use to print: the TCR, Group list, Keystroke Program list, Speed Dial list, Auto Document list, Quick Dial list, Quick Dial label and Auto Documents

Initial Setup TX

Use to set defaults for: Transmission mode (Memory/Immediate), scanning conditions (Resolution, Auto Image Density and Photo Original) and fax auto reset timer

Initial Setup RX

Use to turn on or off: Reverse Order Printing, Chequered Mark, Center Mark, Print RX Time, Multi-copy Reception, Authorized Reception, Special RX Nos., 2-sided printing and Forwarding

- Change the Reception Mode
- Set the Bypass Paper Size Setting

User Functions

Use to program settings you frequently use into the User Function Keys

Key Operator Settings

Use to program/check: your name, your fax number, line type, various ID codes, monitor volume, date and time, number of transmitted/received documents

Preparation

Some menus will not fit on the display. Press **[↑Prev.]** and **[↓Next]** to scroll through them if you cannot see the item you need.

Press **[PrevMenu]** to return to the Previous menu.

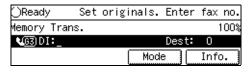
Items that are currently selected appear highlighted.

Press **[OK]** to accept the new settings.

Note that the changes will not be made if you do not press **[OK]**.

Press **[OK]** or **[Cancel]** to return to the previous display.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.



🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

		O User Tools Counter		nmu- Receiv ating File nter Error or Error Mode O TX File	Scanner 7 L
		[F1	F2) (F3) (F4
	$ \langle \rangle $	01	00	0.3	04
	$ \langle \rangle $		02	03	04
					ZAAS120E

B Enter the number of the "Fax".

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	nguage	ſ	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the number that matches the category you require.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
3 Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	etup RX
(Threw) (UNext)	[Menu

🖉 Note

If you select Key Operator Settings, you must enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

5 Enter the function number of the User Tool you require.

⊠Register/Delete	1/3	Enter	number	
D1 Reg. Quick Dial	02	Delete	Quick D	ial
D3 Reg. Group Dial	04	Delete	Group D	ial
(Mext)		PrevMe	nu

🖉 Note

- Function numbers are different depending on the machine model and options attached.
- **5** Follow the instructions on the display.

For more details on each User Tool, see the relevant pages of this manual.

Exiting User Tool mode

When you have made your changes and pressed [OK], press the [User Tools/Counter] key to return to standby mode.

🖉 Note

□ To exit "Key Op. Settings", you need to return to the Facsimile User Tools initial display. Press [PrevMenu] on each display until you reach the main menu, then press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

REGISTER/DELETE MENU

Registering Quick Dials

To save time, you can program a fax number that you use often into a Quick Dial key. Then, whenever you are sending a message to that location, just press that Quick Dial key to dial.

Use the following steps to program a new Quick Dial or to edit or overwrite existing Quick Dials. There are 56 Quick Dials available.

You can register the following items in each key:

- Destination fax number (up to 254 digits)
- Destination name
- Label Insertion (whether to print the destination name on faxes sent to this number)
- TTI (which TTI is printed on faxes sent to this number)

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Quick Dial list and keep it when you program or change fax numbers. ⇒ P.154 "*REPORTS/LISTS*"

Limitation

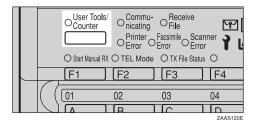
When a registered Quick Dial key is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the message "This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission." is shown and you cannot change the destination for this key. **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI :			Dest:	0
		Mod	e [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



3 Enter the number of the "Fax.

∭User Tools	: Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	oorts/L	ists
B Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial S	etup RX
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)	[Menu

Enter the number for "Reg. Quick Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	1/3	Enter	r number 📃
D1 Reg. Quick Dial	02	Delete	Quick Dial
D3 Reg. Group Dial	04	Delete	Group Dial
(Mext))		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Quick Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the Quick Dial key which you want to register.

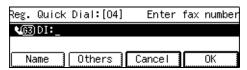
Reg. Quick Dial:	
Press key to register Quick Di	al, or
check Status.	
Status	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If you press a wrong key, press [PrevMenu] then try again.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status Ol-56:	Press key to registe	r 🗖
D1 TRONTO OFFIC	E 02 NEW YORK OFFI	CE
₿3 TOKYO OFFICE	04	
(Throw) Ve	xt) OK	

2 Enter a fax number with the number keys.



🖉 Note

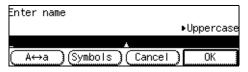
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and try again.
- □ If a fax number is already registered in this Quick Dial key, the number and communication type are shown on the display. If you wish to change the fax number, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter another number.
- □ You cannot omit the fax number.

8 Press [Name] .

🖉 Note

□ If you wish to omit the destination name, go to step **①**.

9 Enter the destination name.



🔗 Note

□ If a destination name is already registered in this Quick Dial key, the name is shown on the display. If you wish to change this name, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter another name.

✓ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

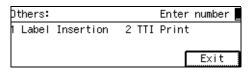
Press [OK].

The fax number and name are displayed.

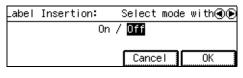
Selecting Label Insertion/TTI Print

1 Press [Others] after step **1**.

2 Enter the "Label Insertion" function number with the number keys.



③ Press the ④ or ▷ key to turn the feature on or off.

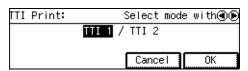


4 Press [OK].

6 Enter the "TTI Print" function number with the number keys.

þ	thers:			Enter	r number
1	Label	Insertion	2 TTI	Prin	t
					Exit

6 Press the ④ or ⓑ key to select which TTI is printed on messages sent to this destination.



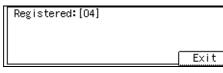
- Press [OK].
- 8 Press [Exit].

Press [OK] to register the new setting.

🖉 Note

If you press [Cancel], the entered values are canceled and the display shown in step 2 appears again.

🖸 Press [Exit].



The display shown in step **1** appears again.

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Quick Dial List

Printing the Quick Dial list allows you to check destinations registered in Quick Dial keys. \Rightarrow P.154 "*RE-PORTS/LISTS*"

Deleting Quick Dials

This procedure describes how to find a programmed Quick Dial and delete it.

Limitation

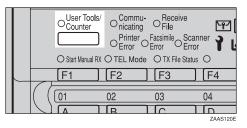
- When a Quick Dial key is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the message "This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/ delete after transmission." is shown and you cannot delete the destination for this key.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.			1	00%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info).]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.





Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial S	etup RX
(†Prov.) UNext)	[Menu

Enter the number for "Delete Quick Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	1/3	Enter	r number 💻
D1 Reg. Quick Dial	02	Delete	Quick Dial
D3 Reg. Group Dial	04	Delete	Group Dial
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Delete Quick Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the Quick Dial key which you want to delete.

The current contents of the key are displayed.

Delete Quic	:kDial	:				
Press key t	o del	ete	Quick	Dial,	or	check
Status.						
Status					Pre	vMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If you press the wrong key, press **[No]** then try again.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1–56:	Press key to delete 💻
D1 TRONTO OFFICE	02 NEW YORK OFFICE
D3 TOKYO OFFICE	O4 HONG KONG OFFI∼
(Three) Vext	ОК

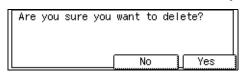
7 Press [Yes].

Delete QuickDial:	[04]	Delete ?				
103 DI: 123						
(HONG KONG OFFICE Label Insert:Off)						
N, and	No	Yes				

🔗 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the destination is not deleted and the display is shown in step **G** appears again.

Press [Yes] to delete the destination stored in this Quick Dial key.



🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the destination is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Quick Dial Key and Function Key Label (Dial label)

You can print a template that can be used to make labels for Quick Dial and User Function keys. The template will have destination or Group names programmed in Quick Dials, and the names of functions assigned to User Function keys.

Limitation

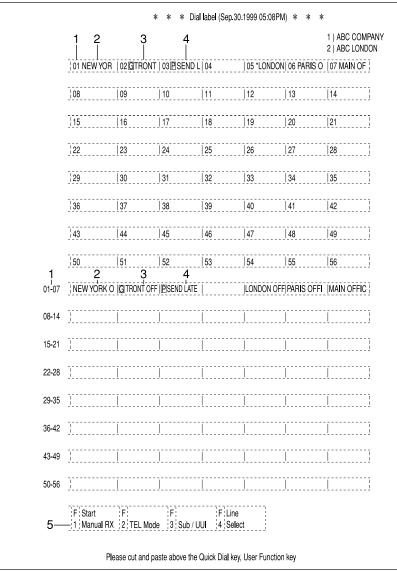
Print the template on A4 label paper that can be peeled and stuck on the operation panel.

🖉 Note

□ You can print the template from the Bypass Tray.

Non-transparent label paper

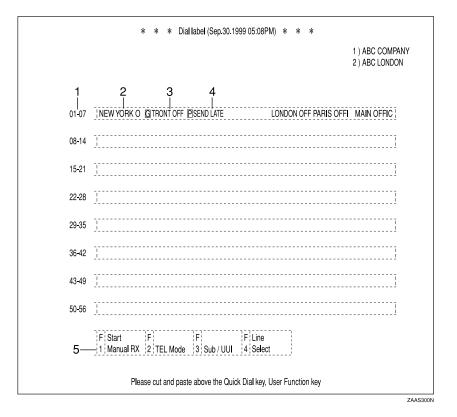
- □ You can choose whether to print on transparent or non-transparent label paper with the User Parameters. By default the setting is "Nontransparent". ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ To print the label template, see P.154 "*REPORTS/LISTS*".



ZAAS310N

- 1. Quick Dial key number
- 2. Destination name
- 3. Group name (G)
- **4.** Program name (P)
- 5. Programmed contents of User Function keys

Transparent label paper



- 1. Quick Dial key number
- 2. Destination name
- 3. Group name (G)
- 4. Program name (P)
- 5. Programmed contents of User Function keys

Registering Groups

If you send the same message to several destinations at the same time on a regular basis, program these destination numbers as a Group. This allows you to dial these destinations with a single key press.

Use these steps to program a new Group or to edit or overwrite an existing Group.

You can register the following items in a Group:

- Destination fax numbers (up to 256 numbers for each group, up to 254 digits for each number)
- Group name (up to 20 characters)

You can enter destination numbers with Quick Dial keys, Speed Dials, or the number keys.

∰Important

□ It is recommend that you print the Group Dial list and keep it when you register or change destinations. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"

🖉 Note

- The maximum number of Groups you can register is 9 (up to 30 Groups with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
- The theoretical maximum number of destinations you can store in a Group *1 is 256 *2 (up to 500 Groups with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed).
- □ When a lot of destinations are registered in a Group using number keys, you sometimes cannot enter a destination for a Memory Transmission with the number keys. ⇒ P.44 "Number Keys"

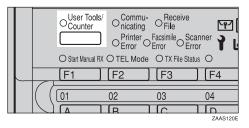
- When a registered group is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the message "This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/ delete after transmission" is shown and you cannot change destinations for this Group.
- ^{*1} If the same number is stored in several Groups, it will only be counted as a single item. This applies to numbers stored using Quick Dials, Speed Dials or the number keys.
- *2 Maximum of 56 Quick Dials, 100 Speed Dials and 100 numbers entered directly with the number keys.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
63 DI :			Dest:	0
		Mod	e	Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	ports/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial Se	etup RX
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)		Menu

Enter the number for "Reg. Group Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	1/3	Enter	numbe	er 🗖
D1 Reg. Quick Dial	02	Delete	Quick	Dial
D3 Reg. Group Dial	04	Delete	Group	Dial
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)		Prev	lenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Group Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

() Enter the Group number with the number keys.

Reg. Group Dial:	
Enter Group Dial number to regi	
check Status. Group Dial(01–30)
Status	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press **[Cancel]** then try again.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1–30:	Enter Group no.
GP.013	GPD14 SALES SECTI~
GRD15 BRANCHES	GRD16 DESIGN SECT~
(↑Prev.) (↓Next) ОК

U Enter a fax number then press [Add].

Reg. Group Dial:[13]	Enter f	ax	numbers
€63 DI:_	Des	:t:	0
		_	
Others	Cancel		OK

🖉 Note

- Enter a destination in any of the following three ways:
 - Enter the fax number with the number keys.
 - Press a Quick Dial key in which the destination is registered.
 - Press the **[Speed Dial]** key and enter a Speed Dial code.
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and re-enter the correct Group number.
- □ If destinations are already registered, they are shown on the display. Press the ④ or ⓑ key to scroll through the destinations on the display. If you want to change a destination, select it and press the [Clear/Stop] key. Press the [Clear/Stop] key once to erase a Quick Dial or Speed Dial number, or press it repeatedly to erase a number entered with the number keys.
- □ You cannot omit the fax number.
- Repeat step **2** for all the destinations you want registered in the Group.
- Press [Others].
- **U** Enter the "Group Name" function number with the number keys.

Dthers:	Enter number	
1 Group Name	2 Assign Key	
	Exit	

Enter the Group name.

Enter name	
	▶Uppercase
(A⇔a)(Symbols)(Cancel) ОК

🖉 Note

□ If the Group name is already registered, it is shown on the display. If you wish to change the Group name, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter another name.

✓ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

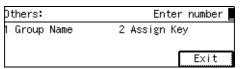
Press [OK].

The entered fax numbers and Group name are shown on the display.

🖉 Note

Press the ④ or ⑤ key to scroll through the destinations on the display. If you wish to change a destination, select it and press the [Clear/Stop] key. Press the [Clear/Stop] key once to erase a Quick Dial or Speed Dial number, or press it repeatedly to erase a number entered with the number keys.

Enter the "Assign Key" function number with the number keys.



🖉 Note

If you do not assign Groups to a Quick Dial key, you need to have stored the Group function in a User Function key beforehand in order to access them.

Press the Quick Dial key you wish to store the Group in.

Assign Key:	Press	Key	to	assign
[]			
*Press Clear to change				
Status	Cance	el 🛛		OK

Press [OK].

Press [Exit].

Press [OK] to register the Group.

Registered: Group Dial 13.

Exit

🖉 Note

 If you press [Cancel], the Group is not programmed and the display shown in step ¹/₂ appears again.

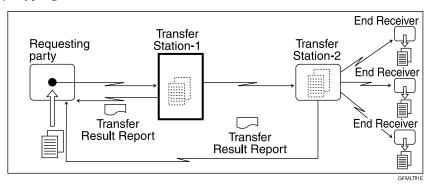
Press [Exit].

The display shown in step **1** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering End Receivers for Multi-step Transfer

In the first transfer station in the chain, store the special code of the Quick Dial, Speed Dial or Group in which the end receiver fax number is stored in the second transfer station in the chain. The following procedure describes how to program an End Receiver into a Group. For how to enter this code, see P.95 "Specifying an End Receiver"



₽ Reference

P.178 "Multistep Transfer" P.93 "TRANSFER REQUEST"

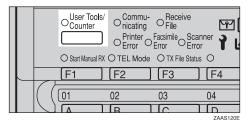
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trans	s.			100%
463 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



3 Enter the number of the "Fax".

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	nguage	ſ	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

₽ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	ports/L	ists
3 Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial S	etup RX
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)	[Menu

5 Enter the number for "Reg. Group Dial" with the number keys.

ﷺRegister/Delete 1/3 Enter number D1 Reg. Quick Dial O2 Delete Quick Dial D3 Reg. Group Dial O4 Delete Group Dial (↑Prov.) (↓Next) PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Group Dial" is not shown, press [**↑Prev.**] or [↓Next].

6 Enter the Group number with the number keys.

```
Reg. Group Dial:
Enter Group Dial number to register, or
check Status. Group Dial(01–30)
```

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] then try again.

□ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1–30:	Enter Group no. 💻
GRD13	GRD14 SALES SECTI~
GRD15 BRANCHES	©®D16 DESIGN SECT∼
(↑Prev.) (↓Next	ОК

2 Enter the code for an End Receiver. \Rightarrow P.95 "Specifying an End Receiver"

🖉 Note

- □ After entering the first End Receiver, you can continue to enter additional End Receivers.
- □ When you register End receivers for Multi-step Transfer, you do not press **[Add]** for this feature to work.
 - For example, to register Quick Dial 01 and Speed Dial 11 in Group 13, enter [1]+[3] at step □, then [#]+[0]+[1]+[#]+[#]+[+]+[1]+[1]. ⇒ P.95 "Specifying an End Receiver"

Reg. Group Dial:[13]	Enter f	ax numbers
<pre>\63)DI:#XX01#11_</pre>	Des	t: 1
Others Add	Cancel	OK

Press [Others].

9 Enter the "Group Name" function number with the number keys.

Dthers:	Enter number
1 Group Name	2 Assign Key
	Exit

D Enter the Group name.

Enter name	
	▶Uppercase
(A⇔a) (Symbols) (Cancel) ОК

🖉 Note

□ If the Group name is already registered, it is shown on the display. If you wish to change the Group name, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter another name.

✓ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

Press [OK].

The entered codes and Group name are shown on the display.

🖉 Note

□ Press the ④ or ⑤ key to scroll through the destinations on the display. If you wish to change a destination, select it and press the **[Clear/Stop]** key repeatedly to erase a number entered with the number keys.

Press [OK].

B Press [Exit].

Press [OK] to register the Group.

Registered:	Group	Dial	13.		
				Exit	

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the Group is not programmed and the display shown in step **1** appears again.

DPress [Exit].

The display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Group Dial list

The Group list allows you to print and check destinations registered in Groups. \Rightarrow P.154 "*REPORTS/LISTS*"

Deleting Groups

This function deletes all destinations registered in a Group.

Limitation

When a registered Group is being used for a Memory Transmission on standby, the message "This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission." is displayed and you cannot delete destinations for this Group.

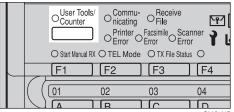
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran:	з.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🔗 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

¡∰Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number _
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial S	etup RX
(ferev.) (UNext)		Menu

Enter the number for "Delete Group Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	1/3	Enter	numbe	er 📃
D1 Reg. Quick Dial	02	Delete	Quick	Dial
D3 Reg. Group Dial	04	Delete	Group	Dial
(Three) (Vext)		Prev	lenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Delete Group Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Enter the Group Dial number you wish to delete with the number keys.

Delete Group Dial:
Enter Group Dial number to delete, or
check status.Group Dial(01–30) 💻 🔤
Status PrevMenu

The registered Group is shown on the display.

Delete Group Dial:	[13]	Delete ?
€63 DI:Sp.D005 TR	ONT BRA~ Des	
(GRDD OFFICE)		[26]
(Uthors)	No	Yes

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press **[No]** and press the correct key.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1–30:	Enter Group no. 💻
GR.D13 ABC [26]	GPD14 SALES SECTI~
GRD15 BRANCHES	©®D16 DESIGN SECT∼
(↑Prev.)(↓Next) ок

2 Press [Yes].

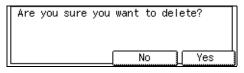
Delete Group Dial:	:[13]	Delete ?
€3 DI:Sp.D005 T	RONT BRA~ Des	t: 3 🔿 🛞
(GRDD OFFICE)		[26]
Úthors	No	Yes

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the Group is not deleted and the display is shown in step **G** appears again.

8 Press [Yes].

The Group is deleted.



🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the Group is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering Speed Dials

If you register a destination in a Speed Dial, you can dial that number by just pressing the **[Speed Dial]** key followed by a two or three digit code.

Use these steps to program a new Speed Dial or overwrite an existing one. You can register the following items in a Speed Dial:

- Destination fax number (up to 100 numbers, up to 254 digits for each number)
- Destination name (up to 20 characters)
- A Telephone Directory search letter (A to Z)
- Label Insertion (whether to print the destination name on faxes sent to this number)
- TTI (which TTI is printed on faxes sent to this number)

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Speed Dial list and keep it when you register or change a destination. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"

Limitation

When a registered Speed Dial is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the message This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission. is shown and you cannot change the destination for this Quick Dial.

🖉 Note

- □ You can specify codes 00 to 99.
- □ If you install the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit, you can register up to 1,000 numbers in Speed Dials. In this case codes 000 to 999 are used.

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set orig	inals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.			1	100%
63 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info) .]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

		User Tools Counter		Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		(F1	F2) (F3) [F4
		01	02	03	04
	\square		l B		
_					ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number 📕
1 Register/Delete		oorts/L	ists
3 Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	itial Se	etup RX
(↑Prev.) ↓Next)		Menu

Enter the number for " Reg. Speed Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	2/3	Enter	r number 💻
D5 Reg. Speed Dial	06	Delete	Speed Dial
07 Store Program	08	Delete	Program
(†Prev.) (↓Next			PrevMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Reg. Speed Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the Speed Dial code you want to register with the number keys.

Reg. Speed Dial:	
Enter Speed Dial number to reg	
check Status. Speed Dial(000-9	999) 💻
Status	PrevMenu

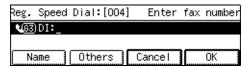
🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]**key and enter the correct number.

□ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status OOO–999:Enter no. to reș	gister 💻
SPD000 ABC COMPANY SPD001 XYZ	COMPANY
SP.002 X SHOP	
(MProv.)(UNOYE)	OK

U Enter a fax number with the number keys.



🖉 Note

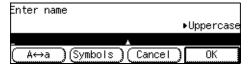
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number.
- □ If a fax number is already registered in this Speed Dial, the number is shown on the display. If you wish to change the fax number, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter another number.
- □ You cannot omit the fax number. Be sure to register it.

8 Press [Name].

🖉 Note

□ If you wish to omit the destination name, go to step **①**.

9 Enter the destination name.



🖉 Note

□ If a destination name is already registered in the Speed Dial, the name is shown on the display. If you wish to change the destination name, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter another name.

₽ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

Press [OK].

The entered destination number and name are shown on the display.

Press [Others].

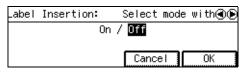
Reg. Speec	Dial:[004] Enter	fax number	
63 DI:80	91457215_			
(LMN FACTORY Label Insert:Off)				
Name	Others	Cancel	OK	

Enter the number to select.

Dthers:	Enter number
1 Label Insertion 3 TTI Print	2 Sp.D Tel. Dir.
	Exit

To turn Label Insertion On or Off

- Enter the "Label Insertion" code with the number keys.
- **2** Press the **(a)** or **(b)** key to turn Label Insertion on or off.



3 Press [OK].

Selecting a Telephone Directory Search Letter

- Enter the "Sp.D Tel. Dir." code with the number keys.
- 2 Enter a search letter (A to Z) for the Telephone Directory.

Speed Dial Tel. Dir.:		
Enter letter to find		
Letter(A-Z)		
	Cancel	OK

Reference

3 Press [OK].

The search letter you entered is shown.

TTI Print

• Enter the "TTI Print" code with the number keys.

Press the (a) or (b) key to select which TTI is printed on messages sent to this destination.

3 Press [OK].

Press [Exit].

Press [OK].

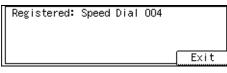
The fax number, destination name, and search letter are registered.

Reg. S	peed	Dial:[004	4]	Enter	fax	number
		91457215_				
(LMN F	ACTO	RY Label 🔅	Inse	rt:Off))	*L
Nam	e	Others) C	ancel		OK

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the Speed Dial is not registered.

D Press [Exit].



Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Speed Dial list

Print this list to check which destinations are programmed. \Rightarrow P.154 "*RE-PORTS/LISTS*"

Deleting Speed Dials

Use this procedure to delete any Speed Dials you are not using anymore.

Limitation

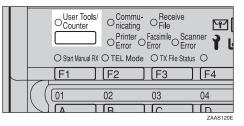
- □ If a registered Speed Dial is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the message "This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission." is shown and you cannot change the destination for this Speed Dial.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no
Memory Trans	S.			100
€ <u>63</u> DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.





Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	etup RX
(↑Prev.) (↓Ne xt)		Menu

Enter the number for "Delete Speed Dial" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	2/3	Enter	r number 💻
D5 Reg. Speed Dial	06	Delete	Speed Dial
D7 Store Program	08	Delete	Program
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Delete Speed Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Enter the Speed Dial code you wish to delete.

Delete Speed Dial:				
Enter Speed Dial number to dele	ete, or			
check Status. Speed Dial(000-9	999) 💻			
Status	PrevMenu			

The registered destination is shown on the display.

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake before entering the first digit, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number. If you make a mistake after entering the last digit, press **[No]** and enter the number again.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status 000–999:	Enter no.	to delete 💻
SP.DOOO ABC COMPA	NY SPD001	XYZ COMPANY
SP.DOO2 X SHOP	Sp.0004	LMN FACTORY
(19167,) (1867		OK

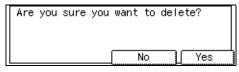
7 Press [Yes].

Delete Speed Dial:[004]	Delete ?
463 DI:8091457215	
(LMN FACTORY Label Insert:Off)	*L
No No	Yes

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the Speed Dial is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

8 Press [Yes].



The Speed Dial is deleted.

🔗 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the Speed Dial is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Storing Keystroke Programs

If you regularly send messages to a particular destination or transmit using the same features, you can save a lot of repetitive keypad operations by storing this information in a Keystroke Program.

Keystroke Programs can be recalled by just pressing a Quick Dial key. The following procedure can be used to program a new Keystroke Program or overwrite an old one.

You can register the following items in Keystroke Programs:

- Memory Transmission, Immediate Transmission, destinations (up to 255 numbers, up to 500 numbers with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed), Resolution, Original Type, G3 or G4 communication mode, Stamp, Send Later, Confidential Transmission, Personal Code transmission, Auto Document, Book Fax, Irregular Scan Area, Send First, Polling Transmission, Polling Reception, Transfer Request, 2–sided transmission and optional functions
- Program name (up to 20 characters)

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Keystroke Program list and keep it when you register or change a function. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/ LISTS"

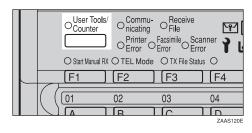
Limitation

- □ The maximum number of programs you can register is 56.
- You cannot register a program in a Quick Dial key used for another function.
- When a registered program key is being used for a Memory Transmission on standby, the message This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission. is displayed and you cannot change the function for this key.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran:	з.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

- □ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.
- **2** Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter i	humber 📕
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/Li	sts
3 Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	tup RX
(†Prov.) (VNext)		Menu

5 Enter the number for "Store Program" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	2/3	Enter	r number 💻
D5 Reg. Speed Dial	06	Delete	Speed Dial
D7 Store Program	08	Delete	Program
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Delete Speed Dial" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Deress a Quick Dial key you want to register.

The "Store Program" display is shown.

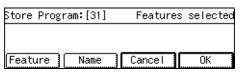
Store	Prog	ran	n:				
Press	key	to	store	Keystroke	Program	n,	or
check	Stat	us.					
Stat	tus				Prev	len	u

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press **[Cancel]** and press the correct key.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1-56:	Press key to register	_
29 KSP REPORT	30 KSP DAILY	
B1	32	
(Prev.) (JNe	xt) OK	

Press [Feature].



Carry out the sequence of operations you wish to store in this program, then press [OK].

①Store Program	Enter	feature	s.Pr	ress	ОK
Memory Trans.				10)0%
€63 DI:_		Des	t:	0	
		Mode		OK	

🖉 Note

- □ If you press the **[Clear Modes]** key, the display returns to the steps before keystroke programming.
- □ For example, say you wish to use Send Later to destination number 0123456789. The sequence of operations would be:
 - Enter "0123456789" using the number keys.
 - Press [Mode].

• Enter the function number for "Send Later" using the number keys.

⊠Transmission Mode	Enter number 📃
D1 Send Later	02 Confidential TX
D3 Personal Code	04 Auto Document
(ferev.) UNext) Exit

- Set Send Later \Rightarrow P.74 "SEND LATER"
- □ If a program is already stored in the Quick Dial key, the function name is shown on the display. If you want to change the program, press the **[Clear Modes]** key and program function again.

Press [OK].

()Store Program Ent	ter features.Press OK
Memory Trans. Send L	ater 100%.
<pre>\63DI:0123456789_</pre>	Dest: 1
Add	Mode OK

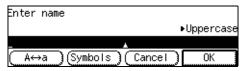
D Press [Name].

Store Program:[31]	Features	selected
þest: 1 Memory Trans.	Others	
Feature Name	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

□ You cannot omit a program name. Be sure to register it.

Enter the program name.



🖉 Note

If a program name is already registered in the Quick Dial key, the name is shown on the display. If you wish to change the program name, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter another name.

Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

Press [OK.]

The function and program name are shown on the display.

B Press [OK].

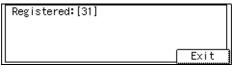
The program is stored.

Store Program:[31]	Features selected			
Dest: 1 Memory Trans. Others				
(KSPWEEKLY)				
Feature Name	Cancel OK			

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the Keystroke Program is canceled and the display shown in step **□** appears again.

Press [Exit].



The screen shown in step **G** appears again.

E Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Keystroke Program List

The Keystroke Program list allows you to print and check functions registered in keystroke programs.⇒ P.154 "*REPORTS/LISTS*"

Using a Keystroke Program

E.g. execute a program using Send Later for the fax number "0123456789."

Set your original.

🖉 Note

- □ If the destination, resolution, contrast and/or original type are not registered in the program, carry out these operations now.
- **2** Press the Quick Dial key programmed with the Keystroke Program.

Keystroke Program has been selected. (Press Clear Modes key to cancel.) [31]KSP WEEKLY Exit

In this example, the program name "WEEKLY" is shown on the display.

B Press [Exit] then the [Start] key.

The machine starts scanning the original.

()Store Program	Enter	features.P	'ress OK
Memory Trans. Se	nd Late	er	100%
NG3 DI: 01234567	89_	Dest:	1
Add		Mode	OK 🛛

The message will be sent at the specified time.

Deleting a Keystroke Program

Limitation

□ When a registered program is being used for a standby Memory Transmission, the following message appears and you cannot delete the program: This destination is in use for standby transmission file. Please modify/delete after transmission.

🖉 Note

If you delete a program, the registered program name is also deleted.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.				100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mod	e] [Inf	o.]

Note 🖉

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the [Facsimile] key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

O Start Manua		mu- Receiv ing File ^{er} Error ode O TX File S	Scanner Error
(F1] [F2) (F3) (F4
	02	03	04
) [R		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] [L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

^PReference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" the with number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete		orts/L	ists
B Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial S	etup RX
(↑Prev) ↓Ne xt)		Menu

5 Enter the number for "Delete Program" with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete 3/3	Enter number 💻
09 Reg. Auto Doc. 10	
11 Reg. Irreg. Area 12	Delete Irreg.Area
Prev. (URGYE)	PrevMenu

Note 🖉

- □ If "Delete Program" is not shown, press [**1**Prev.] or [**JNext**].
- Di Press the Quick Dial key containing the program you wish to delete.

Delete Program:	
Press key to delete Keystroke	Program,
pr check Status.	
Status	PrevMenu

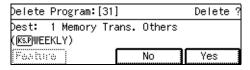
The contents of the program are shown on the display.

Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press [No] and the correct key.
- □ You can press [Status] to see the status currently programmed.

Status O1–56:	Press key to delete	
29 KSP REPORT	30 KSP DAILY	
31 KSP WEEKLY	32 KSP TEST	
(†Prev.) (↓Next	t) OK	

2 Press [Yes].



Note 🔗

□ If you press **[No]**, the program is not deleted and the display shown in step **1** appears again.

Press [Yes].

Are	you	sure	you	want	to	dele	ete?
				N	lo		Yes

The program is deleted.

🔗 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the program is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering an Auto Document

If you find that you often have to send a particular page to people (e.g., a map, a standard attachment, or a set of instructions), store that page in memory as an Auto Document. This saves re-scanning the original every time you wish to send it.

Use the following procedure to program a new Auto Document or overwrite an existing one.

∰Important

- You can store up to 6 Auto Documents (18 with the optional Fax Function Upgrade installed). Each Auto Document can contain one page.
- You can store the following items in an Auto Document:
 - Scan settings (Resolution, Original Type, and Image Density)
 - Irregular Scan Area
 - Document name (up to 10 characters)
- □ We recommend that you print the Auto Document list and keep it when you register or change a document. ⇒ P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"

Limitation

□ You can only send one Auto Document per transmission.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🔗 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

	User Tools Counter	O Brinter C	- Receive File Facsimile Sca Error Erro FO TX File Statu	
	[F1]	F2] [F3] [F4
$\left(\right)$	01	02	03	04
\square		ſR		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tool:	s Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter	Language	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	etup RX
(îprev.) (UNext)		Menu

Enter the number for "Reg. Auto Doc." with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	3/3	Enter	number 💻
D9 Reg. Auto Doc.			Auto Doc.
11 Reg. Irreg. Are	a 12	Delete	Irreg.Area
(↑Prev.)(UNOV)			PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Auto Doc." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

(Enter the number of the Auto Document you want to register with the number keys.

Reg. Auto D)oc.∶ Ente	er no.to register 💻
DIATTACHMEN	IT 02MAP	03
þ4	05	- 06
(three,)	↓Next	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake with the first digit, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number. If you make a mistake for digit, press **[Cancel]** and enter the correct number.
- If a document is already registered with that Auto Document number, the name is shown on the display.

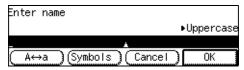
2 Press [Name].

Reg. Auto Doc.:	Press Name key
Doc. 3:	
Name Size	Cancel

🖉 Note

□ You cannot omit a document name. Be sure to register it.

8 Enter the Auto Document name.



🖉 Note

If the Name is already registered, it is shown on the display. If you want to change the document name, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter another name.

✓ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

Press [OK].

🖉 Note

- □ If you are storing a standard size document, go to step **D**.
- When you program the nonstandard paper size press [Size]. If your document is the standard size, you can skip step **D** and **D**.

Reg. Auto Doc.: Set original.Press Start Doc. 3: FORM Name Size Cancel

Select a size using the ⓓ or ▷ key and press [OK].

Irreg. Scan Area:	Select area w	vi th 👁 🕞
A <mark>rea 1</mark> /Area 2/8½x116]/8½×11⊡/8½	ി4മ
/11x17@/A4@/A4@/A	3 ല/84ല	
Status	Cancel	OK

The document name and original size are shown on the display.

Set your original and press the [Start] key.

Reg. Auto Doc.: Set (original.Press Start
Doc. 3: FORM	(A4四)
Name Size	Cancel

The machine starts scanning the original.

When the original has been completely scanned in, press [Exit].

The Auto Document is stored. The display shown in step **1** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Auto Document list

The Auto Document list allows you to print and check stored Auto Document names. To print this list, follow the steps shown in "Reports/Lists". \Rightarrow P.154 "*REPORTS/LISTS*"

Deleting an Auto Document

Limitation

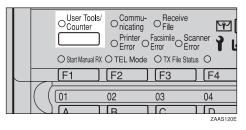
- You cannot delete an Auto Document waiting to be transmitted. Delete it after the transmission or delete the Auto Document after deleting the file waiting to be transmitted.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Trans	s.				99%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info).

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
3 Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	etup RX
(Threw) (Wext)		Menu

Enter the "Delete Auto Doc." code with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	3/3	Enter	r number į	
D9 Reg. Auto Doc.			Auto Doc.	
11 Reg. Irreg. Are	a 12	Delete	Irreg.Are	ea
(↑Prev.) (↓Nevt)		PrevMen	u I

🖉 Note

- □ If "Delete Auto Doc." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the number of the Auto Document you want to delete with the number keys.

Delete Auto	Doc.: Enter	no.	to delete 💻
D1ATTACHMEN	T O2MAP		03FORM
Þ4	05		06
(three,)	↓Next		PrevMenu

The stored document is shown on the display.

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake with the first digit, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number.

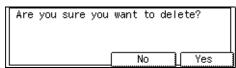
2 Press [Yes].

Delete Auto Doc.:		Delete ?
Doc. 3: FORM		(A4@)
Nano	No	Yes

🔗 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the document is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

B Press [Yes].



The Auto Document is deleted.

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the document is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Printing an Auto Document

To check on stored Auto Documents, you can print them out.

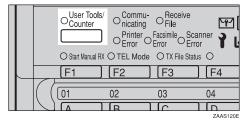
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tr	ans.				99%
463 DI:			Dest:	0	
		Mode	e] [Info) .]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Enter the function number for "Reports/Lists" with the number keys.

¡∰Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	oorts/Li	sts
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	itial Se	etup RX
(†Prov.) (UNext)		Menu

Enter the "Auto Doc. orig." code with the number keys.

⊠Reports/Lists	2/2	Enter	number
5 K. Program List	6 Au	ito Doc.	List
7 Auto Doc. orig.			
(↑Prev.) (↓₩ort)	[PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Auto Doc." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Enter the number of the Auto Document you wish to print out with the number keys.

Enter D	oc. no.	and	press	Start	key	
01ATTACH	MENT 02-		-	03		
04	05-		-	06		
Treev.	↓Nex:	t			Cance	1

2 Press the **[Start]** key.

Printing. Please wait. Cancel

When printing is completed, the display shown in step **5** appears again.

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, the printing stops and the display shown in step **J** appears again.

E Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering An Irregular Area

When you select Irregular Area to scan a non-standard size original, two custom sizes of original are available (Area 1 and Area 2). Use this function to register these custom sizes in advance.

To change an existing Irregular Scan size, just use the following procedure to overwrite it.

∰Important

When registering or changing an original size, we recommend that you make a memo of the new size.

Limitation

- □ For the vertical length (width), select "Auto," "8¹/₂ inch," "11 inch,"
 "8.3 inch (A4□)," "10.1inch (B4□)," or "11.7 inch (A3□)".
- □ For the horizontal length, specify from 128 to 1,200mm or from 5.5 to 47 inches.

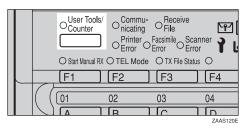
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Trans	з.				99%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

🔗 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number 🗧
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial Se	etup RX
(†Prov.) UNe xt)		Menu

E Enter the "Reg. Irreg. Area" code with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete ∷	3/3	Enter	number 💻
D9 Reg. Auto Doc.	10	Delete	Auto Doc.
11 Reg. Irreg. Area	12	Delete	Irreg.Area
(↑Prev.)(UNOVE)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Reg. Irreg. Area" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Deress [Area 1] or [Area 2].

Reg. Irreg. Area:	Select	Area1	or	Area2
Area 1:				
Area 2:				
Area 1 Area 2		[Prev	/Menu

🖉 Note

□ If a size is already registered, it is shown on the display.

Press [Vert.].

Reg.	Irreg.	Area:	Select	Horiz.	or	Vert.
Area	1:	-				
Ve	ert.][Horiz	. Car	ncel	(Ж

Select a size you wish to register using the ④ or ⑤ key and press [OK].

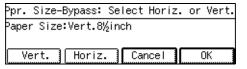
/ert. Length:	Select length with 🖲 🕞				
auto / 8½inch / 11inch / 8.3inch(A4ם) / 10.1inch(B4ם) / 11.7inch(A3ם)					
10.11nch(6421) /	Cancel OK				

The specified size is shown on the display.

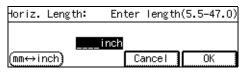
🖉 Note

□ When you select "Auto", "---" is shown on the display.

9 Press [Horiz.].



Enter a length with the number keys and press [OK].

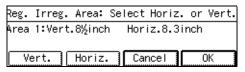


The specified size is shown on the display.

🖉 Note

□ Each time you press [mm ↔ inch], the units change between "inch" and "mm" alternately. If you enter a length and change the unit by pressing [mm ↔ inch], the length is converted automatically according to the unit (fractions are rounded off). For example, when you enter [2], [5], and [0] in millimeters and change to "inch", the length "9.8inch" is shown on the display. If you press [mm ↔ inch] again, "249mm" is displayed.

Press [OK].



Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Reg.	Irreg.	Area:	Select	Area1	or	Area2
Area	1:Vert	.8%inch	Horia	z.8.3i	nch	
Area	2:	-				
Are	ea 1][Area 2]	0	Pre	/Menu

Deleting an Irregular Area

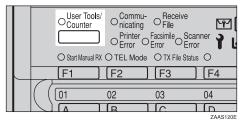
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tran:	з.			1	00%
📲 🖸 🕹 🕹 📲			Dest:	0	
		Mod	e [Info	•

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



3 Enter the number of the "Fax".

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

PReference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Register/Delete" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number _
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	ports/L	ists
B Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial S	etup RX
(î°rov,) (↓Ne xt)		Menu

Enter the "Delete Irreg.Area" code with the number keys.

⊠Register/Delete	3/3	Enter	r number 💻
			Auto Doc.
11 Reg. Irreg. Are	a 12	Delete	Irreg.Area
(↑Prev.) (UNOY)			PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Delete Irreg.Area" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

The registered sizes are displayed.

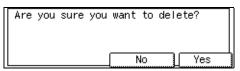
Deress [Area 1] or [Area 2].

Reg.	Irreg.	Area:	Select	Area1	or	Area2
Area	1:Vert	.8½inch	Horiz	z.8.3i	nch	
Area	2:Vert	.11.7in	ch Horiz	z.47.0	incł	n
Are	a 1 🛛	Area 2		0	Pre	/Menu

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press **[No]** and try again.

7 Press [Yes].



The Irregular Area is deleted.

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the Irregular Area is not deleted and the display shown in step **G** appears again.

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

REPORTS/LISTS

This function allows you to print the following reports and lists manually. Select a report or list as needed.

- TCR \Rightarrow P.113 "PRINTING THE TCR"
- Quick Dial list ⇒ P.127 "Quick Dial List"
- Group Dial list ⇒ P.137 "Group Dial list"
- Keystroke Program list ⇒ P.145 *"Keystroke Program List"*
- Speed Dial list ⇒ P.141 "Speed Dial list"
- Auto Document list ⇒ P.149 "Auto Document list"

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set orig	inals. E	Inter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.			1	100%
163 DI		[)est:	0	
		Mode		Info) .]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

		O Start Manual R		Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		(F1	F2	F3) (F4
	$\langle \rangle$				
	((01	02	03	04
	\square		l B		
					ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Reports/Lists" with the number keys.

⊠Fax Features	1/2	Ente	r number _
1 Register/Delete	2 Re	ports/	Lists
B Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial	Setup RX
(î°rov,) ↓N ext)		Menu

Printing the TCR

• Enter the number for "TCR" with the number keys.

⊠Reports/Lists	1/2	Enter number
1 TCR	2 Qu	iick Dial List
3 Group Dial List	4 Sp	eed Dial List
(Three) Vext)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

If you make a mistake, press
 [Cancel] and enter the correct number.

Printing the Quick Dial List

Enter the number for "Quick Dial List" with the number keys.

⊠Reports/Lists	1/2	Enter	number _
1 TCR	2 Qu	iick Dia	l List
β Group Dial List	4 Sp	eed Dia	l List
(Three) Vext)		PrevMenu

Solution Note

- If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] and enter the correct number.
- 2 Select the type of the list using the ④ or ⓑ key.

Print Quick Dial List. Select ® Dand
press start
press start ♪ <mark>Quick Dial List</mark> / Dial label
Cancel

- To print the Quick Dial List, select "Quick Dial List".
- To print the Dial Label, select "Dial Label".

Printing the Group Dial List

Enter the number for "Group Dial List" with the number keys.

⊠Reports/Lists	1/2	Enter number
1 TCR	2 Qu	iick Dial List
3 Group Dial List	4 Sp	eed Dial List
(Three) (Vext)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

If you make a mistake, press
 [Cancel] and enter the correct number.

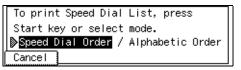
Printing the Speed Dial List

Enter the number for "Speed Dial List" with the number keys.

⊠Reports/Lists	1/2	Enter number	
1 TCR	2 Qu	ick Dial List	
3 Group Dial List	4 Sp	eed Dial List	
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)	PrevMenu	1

🔗 Note

- If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] and enter the correct number.
- Select the list order using the or key.



- To print the list in the numerical order, select "Speed Dial Order".
- To print the list in the alphabetical order, select "Alphabetic Order".

5 Press the **[Start]** key.

When printing is completed, the display shown in step **1** appears again.

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, the printing stops and the display shown in step **4** appears again.

6 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

INITIAL SETUP TX

When you turn on the machine or return to Copy mode, the machine returns to the home settings. You can change these home settings so that the machine starts with your most frequently used features selected.

This procedure can be used to change the home settings for the transmission mode (Memory/Immediate Transmission) and scan settings (Resolution, Photo Original, Auto Image Density, and Fax Auto Reset).

🖉 Note

□ You can also choose whether the machine returns to the home settings after each communication. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mod	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

User Tools/ Counter Commu- nicating Receive File Printer Facsimile Error Scanner Start Manual RX TEL Mode O TX File Status					
F1) [-2	[F3] [F4	
	0	2	03	04	
	1 [A D			

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	nguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Initial Setup TX" with the number keys.

¡∰Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	orts/L	ists
β Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial S	etup RX
(ferev.) UNext)		Menu

The "Initial Setup TX" menu is shown on the display.

🖉 Note

□ If "Initial Setup TX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

5 Enter the function number with the number keys.

⊠Initial Setup TX	Enter number
1 Trans. Mode	2 Resolution
3 Photo Original	4 Auto Image Density
5 Fax Auto Reset	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press **[Cancel]** and enter the correct number.

6 Select the mode you want to change using the ④ or ⊚ key then press [OK].

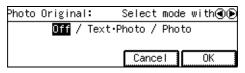
Transmission Mode

Trans.	Mode:		Se	elect	mode	wi th 👁 🕑
	Memory	Trans.	7	Immed	diate	ТΧ
			Г	Conor		0K 1
			L	Cance		UN

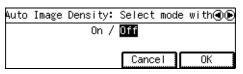
Resolution

Resolution:	Select mode with 🖲 🕞
Standard /	Detail / Super Fine
	Cancel OK

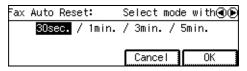
Photo Original



Auto Image Density



Fax Auto Reset



🔗 Note

□ If you want to change other settings, repeat steps **5** and **6**.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

INITIAL SETUP RX

The Initial Setup Reception function allows you to turn the following reception functions on or off.

- Reception Mode ⇒ P.59 "SELECT-INGTHERECEPTIONMODE"
- Chequered Mark ⇒ P.64 "Chequered Mark"
- Center Mark \Rightarrow P.64 "Center Mark"
- Print RX Time ⇒ P.64 "Reception Time"
- Multi-copy Reception ⇒ P.65 "Multi-copy Reception"
- 2-sided Printing ⇒ P.65 "2-Sided Printing"
- Reverse Order Printing ⇒ P.68 "Reverse Order Printing"
- Authorized RX ⇒ P.186 "Authorized Reception"
- Special RX Nos. ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"
- Forwarding ⇒ P.190 *"Forwarding"*
- Bypass Paper Size setting ⇒ P.72 "Having Incoming Messages Printed on Paper From the Bypass Tray"

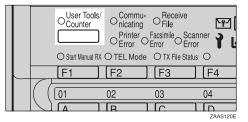
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trans	з.			100%
€ <u>63</u> DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
[Counter] [La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the "Initial Setup RX" code with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number
1 Register/Delete	2 Rep	oorts/L	ists
B Initial Setup TX	4 In	itial S	etup RX
(îprev.) (U Next)		Menu

The "Initial Setup RX" menu is shown on the display.

🔗 Note

□ If "Initial Setup RX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

5 Enter the function number of the item you want to change with the number keys.

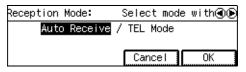
⊠Initial Setup RX	1/3	Enter number 💻
D1 Recp. Mode	02	Chequered Mark
D3 Center Mark	04	Print RX Time
(↑Prev.) ↓Ne xt)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

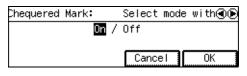
□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number.

6 Change the setting using the ④ or(▶) key and press [OK].

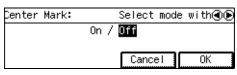
Reception Mode



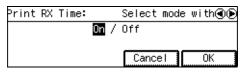
Chequered Mark



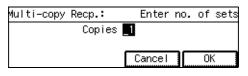
Center Mark



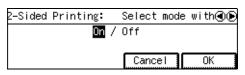
Print RX Time



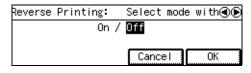
Multi-copy Recp.



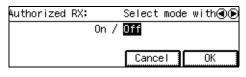
2-Sided Printing



Reverse Printing



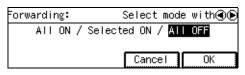
Authorized RX



Special RX Nos.

Special	RX Nos.:	Select mode	wi th 👁 🕞
	On	/ Off	
		Cancel	OK

Forwarding



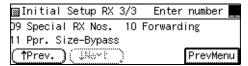
🖉 Note

- □ If you wish to change other functions, repeat steps **5** and **6**.
- Select on or off for Chequered Mark, Center Mark, Print RX Time, 2-Sided Printing, Authorized RX, Special RX Nos., and Reverse Printing.
- For "Multi-copy Recp." enter the number of copies with the number keys.
- □ For Forwardingselect the messages to forward, either from all the senders, from specified senders or nothing.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

To Set the Bypass Paper Size

1 Enter the "Ppr. Size-Bypass" code with the number keys.



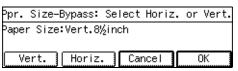
2 Press the ④ or ⓑ key to select "Auto".

Þpr. Size-Bypass:	Select mode	with 👁 🕑
Auto / <mark>Spec</mark>	ial Paper Si	ze
[Ppr.Size]	Cancel	ОК

B Press [Ppr.Size].

Ppr. Size-Bypass:	Select mode with 🕢 🕞
Auto / Spec	cial Paper Size
Ppr.Size	Cancel OK

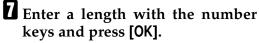
Press [Vert.].



• Press the ④ or **•** key to select the size and press [OK].

Vert. Length:	Select	length	wi th 👁 🕞		
3 <mark>%inch</mark> / 11inch / 8.3inch(A4⊡) /					
10.1inch(B4四) / 11.7inch(A3四)					
	Car	icel	OK		

6 Press [Horiz.].



Horiz.Length:	Enter length(5.5-47.0)
	inch
(mm⇔inch)	Cancel OK

Press [OK].

Ppr. Size-Bypass: Select Horiz. or Vert. Paper Size:Vert.8½inch Horiz.5.9inch Vert. Horiz. Cancel OK

Press [OK].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS

You can program each of the User Function keys (**[F1]** –**[F4]**) with a function that you use frequently. When you wish to use that function, instead of having to search through several menus to find it, just press the appropriate User Function key. This procedure can be used to edit, delete or change the contents of the User Function keys.

🖉 Note

When the machine is shipped, the following functions are stored in the User Function keys by default. Telephone mode cannot be programmed in [F1] or [F3].

Key	Standard	With ISDN or extra G3 Unit options
F1	Start Manual RX	\leftarrow
F2	TEL Mode	\leftarrow
F3	Transmission Result Display	\leftarrow
F4	-	G3/G4 Mode Selection (with optional extra G3 Interface Unit/ISDN Unit)

Storing/Editing the Contents of a User Function Key

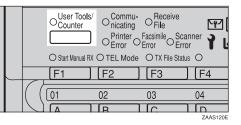
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	ˈfax no.
Memory Trar	ns.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mod	le 🛛	Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

2 Enter the function number for "User Functions" with the number keys.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number 🏻
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(†Prev.)(UNANT			Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "User Functions" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Press the User Function key ([F1]—[F4]) you want to use.

Jser Functions:			
Press User Function key	to	register,	or
check Status (F1-F4)			
Status		PrevMe	enu

🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press **[Cancel]** and press the correct key.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see how the User Function keys are currently programmed.
- If you have the optional extra G3 Interface Unit or optional ISDN Unit installed, you can not re-assign User Function key [F4].
- Enter the function number you want to register into the User Function key with the number keys and press [OK].

Jser Functions:	Enter i	tem number
F3:12 01 TX FileStatus	s 02 RX F	ileStatus
03 Auto Document	t O4 Prin	t TCR
(frev.) (INext)	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

- □ If appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- ☐ If you wish to store more functions, repeat steps **5** and **6** for other keys.
- □ If you press **[Cancel]**, the function is not stored and the display shown in step **□** appears again.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Using a User Function Key

Press the User Function Key ([F1]-[F4]) in which the function you want to use is stored.

The stored function's display is shown.

E.g., "Print TCR"

To print TCR, press Start key or select mode. •ATT/File No. /Pers.Code Cancel

Functions You Can Store In User Function Keys

Function Name	Default Key	Note
Manual Reception	F1	Registrable/editable
Reception Mode Select	F2	Registrable/editable
Transmission Result	F3	Registrable/editable
Display Line Select*	(F4)	Automatically assigned
Group		Registrable/editable
Sub-address/UUI		Registrable/editable
F Code		Registrable/editable
Reception Result Display		Registrable/editable
Auto Document		Registrable/editable
TCR		Registrable/editable
Personal Code Transmission		Registrable/editable
Forwarding		Registrable/editable
Telephone Directory		Registrable/editable

*Only with the optional G4 unit or optional extra G3 unit.

KEY OPERATOR SETTINGS

Personal Codes

This function allows you to keep track of machine usage. When Personal Codes are programmed and Personal Code Access is turned on users have to enter their Personal Code before they send a fax. \Rightarrow P.211 *"Printing the User Parameter List"*

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Personal Code list and keep it when you register or change a Personal Code. ⇒ P.154 "*REPORTS/ LISTS*"

🖉 Note

- □ To enter a Personal Code when send a fax, follow the steps shown in "Personal Code Transmission".
 ⇒ P.78 "PERSONAL CODE TRANSMISSION"
- □ If Personal Code Access is switched on, users cannot use the facsimile feature unless they enter their Personal Code. ⇒ P.167 "Personal Code Access"

Registering Personal Codes

You can register the following items in a Personal Code:

- Personal Code (any 8 digit number except 0000000)
- Name (up to 20 characters)

To change an existing Personal code, just overwrite it with a new one.

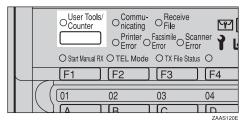
Limitation

On a standard model you can register up to 20 codes (up to 50 with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed). **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

- □ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

⊠Fax Features	2/2	Ente	er number _
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(↑Prev.)(↓Nort			Menu

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the number for "Personal Code" with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter	number 📘
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	-04	Counters	3
(Mext)		PrevMenu

(Enter the number for "Reg. Pers. Code" with the number keys.

⊠Personal Code	Enter number
	2 Delete Pers. Code
3 Pers.Lode Access	4 Print Pers. Code PrevMenu

∠ Enter a Personal Code with the number keys and press [**④**].

Reg. Pers. Coo	ie:
Enter code to	register or change,
and press ⊕.	Personal Code
Status	PrevMenu 🛞

🖉 Note

- □ If you enter a wrong number, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter a correct number. If you enter a wrong value for the 8th digit, press **[Cancel]** and enter the correct number from the first digit.
- □ If you enter a Personal code that has already been programmed, the contents appear on the display. If you wish to change the name, press **[Name]** and enter another name. If you wish to program another code, press **[Cancel]** and enter the new code.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see which codes have been already programmed.

Status:	Enter	code,	press	۰	
07207227	JOHN	080	082424	ACCOUNT	~
92926600	NANCY				
(†Prev.)(`****)		Cancel		-

8 Press [Name].

Reg. Pers. Code: Press Name to enter Personal Code:02262620 Name Cancel OK

9 Enter the name.

Enter	name		
		▶Upperd	ase:
_		<u>*</u>	
(A←	→a_)(Symbols_)	Cancel OK	

🖉 Note

□ If the name has already been programmed, it appears on the display. If you wish to change the name, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter another name.

₽ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

D Press [OK].

The entered Personal Code and name are shown on the display.

Press [OK] to register the code and name.

Reg. Pers. Code:	Press Name	e to enter
Personal Code:022626	20	
(Name:JAMES)		
Name	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

If you press [Cancel], the entered Personal Code is canceled and the display shown in step 2 appears again.

Press [Exit].

Registered: Personal Code 02262620 Exit

The display shown in step **2** appears again.

□ If you register Personal Code from **[Status]**, you need to press **[Cancel]** before step **B**.

Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Personal Code

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set c	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf	o.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

			nu- Receive File r Facsimile Error E pde O TX File S	Scanner 7 L
	(F1	F2] (F3) (F4
	((01	02	03	04
) (R		ZAAS120E

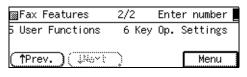
Enter the code for "Fax".

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	nguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual. Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

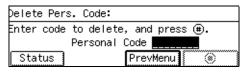
- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the number for "Personal Code" with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Setting	s 1/5	Enter	number 💻
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	04	Counters	s
(Three) Ve xt			PrevMenu

6 Enter the number for "Delete Pers. Code" with the number keys.

⊠Personal Code	Enter number
1 Reg. Pers. Code	2 Delete Pers. Code
3 Pers.Code Access	4 Print Pers. Code
	PrevMenu

Enter the Personal Code you want to delete with the number keys and press [⁽¹⁾].



🖉 Note

- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct code.
- □ You can press **[Status]** to see which codes have been already programmed.

Status:	Enter	code	e, pr	ess	۲		
02262620	JAMES	(07207:	227	JOH	IN	
p8082424	ACCOUNT	~ 9	92926	600	NAN	ICY	
(†Prev.)(1864)		Can	cel		۲	

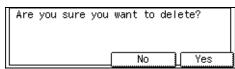
B Press [Yes].

Delete Pers. Code:		Delete 1
Personal Code:0720 (Name:JOHN)	7227	
(Nallie • John /		
N, mo	No	Yes

If you press **[No]**, the Personal Code is not deleted and the display shown in step **2** appears again.

Press [Yes].

The Personal Code is deleted.



🖉 Note

- □ If you press **[No]**, the Personal Code is not deleted and the display shown in step **1** appears again.
- □ If you register the Personal Code from Status, you need to press **[Cancel]** before step **①**.

Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

W Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

Personal Code Access

The machine can be set up so that users cannot use it without entering a registered Personal Code. This prevents an unauthorized person from sending a fax message and helps track the activity of each user.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trar	ns.			100%
163 DI :			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

		O Start Manual R	⊖ ^{Printer} ⊂	Receive File Facsimile Error Erro O TX File Statu	
		[F1	F2	F3	[F4
	$\left(\left(\right) \right)$	01	02	03	04
	\square	Δ	I R		

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	inguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual. Enter the number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

¡∰Fax Features	2/2	Ento	er number 🔤
5 User Functions	6 Key	Ор.	Settings
(Prev.)			Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the number for "Personal Code" with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter	number _
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	04	Counters	s
(Mext)		PrevMenu

5 Enter the "Pers.Code Access" code with the number keys.

∭Personal Code	Enter number
1 Reg. Pers. Code 3 Pers.Code Access	2 Delete Pers. Code 4 Print Pers. Code
	PrevMenu

Switch access on or off using the or (b) key and then press [OK].

Pers.Code A	ccess:	Select	mode	wi th	00
	0n /	Off			
		Cance		OK	

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the previous setting is not changed and the display shown in step **□** appears again.

Press [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

The display returns to the Personal Code screen.

Printing the Personal Code List

Print this list to find out the registered Personal Codes and their names.

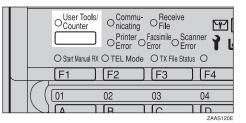
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set orig	inals. E	nter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
63 DI:_		D	est:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



B Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	er number
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(↑Prev.)(↓Novt			Menu

168

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Enter the number for "Personal Code" with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter	number 📘
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	04	Counters	s
(Three) (Vext)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Personal Code" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

6 Enter the number for "Print Pers. Code" with the number keys.

⊠Personal Code	Enter number
	2 Delete Pers. Code 4 Print Pers. Code
	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Print Pers. Code" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the [Start] key.

When printing is completed, the display shown in step **G** appears again.

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, the printing stops and the display shown in step **□** appears again.

8 Press [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

RTI/TTI

An RTI (Receive Terminal Identification) is passed to a receiver or sender when you send or receive a fax. When the RTI is received, it is shown on the display and printed in a report at the other end.

The TTI (Transmitter Terminal Identification) is printed on the header of every fax you send.

You usually should contain your name in both of these identifications.

You can store two TTI identifications: "TTI 1" and "TTI 2".

For example, if you store your department name in one and your organization name in the other, you could use the first when sending internal faxes and the second for external faxes.

Limitation

- The RTI does not work unless the other party has the same make machine with the RTI feature.
- You can program letter, symbols, number, and spaces in an RTI and TTI.

🖉 Note

- □ You can program up to 20 characters in a RTI and 32 in a TTI.
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

		O Start Manual R	Onicating OPrinter Error	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		(F1)	F2) (F3) [F4
	$\int f$	01	02	03	04
			02	03	04
		Δ	IR		
					ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

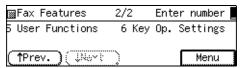
∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	anguage		Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

5 Enter the "RTI/TTI" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter	number 📘
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	04	Counters	s
(Mext)		PrevMenu

Press the "TTI 1" or "TTI 2" code with the number keys.

⊠RTI/TTI	Enter number
1 TTI 1 B RTI	2 TTI 2
5	Menu

🖉 Note

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, this display is shown.

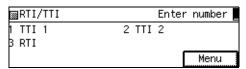
⊠RTI/TTI	Enter number
1 TTI 1	2 TTI 2
3 RTI G3-1	4 RTI G3-2
	Menu

2 Enter a TTI and press [OK].

Enter	TTI						
					►U	pperc	ase
				_			
(A←	ha) (S	ymbols	\mathbb{D}	Cancel		OK	

P.215 "Entering Text"

Press the "RTI" code with the number keys.



🖉 Note

□ When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, press the "RTI G3-1" or "RTI G3-2" code with the number keys.

⊠RTI/TTI	Enter number
1 TTI 1	2 TTI 2
3 RTI G3-1	4 RTI G3-2
	Menu

9 Enter an RTI and press [OK].

Enter RTI • Uppercase (Symbols) (Cancel) OK

✓ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the entered characters are canceled and the display shown in step **B** appears again.

Press [Menu] to confirm.

⊠RTI/TTI	Enter number
1 TTI 1 B RTI	2 TTI 2
	Menu

🖉 Note

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, this display is shown.

⊠RTI/TTI	Enter number
1 TTI 1	2 TTI 2
3 RTI G3-1	4 RTI G3-2
	Menu

Press [PrevMenu].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Memory Lock

When you switch Memory Lock On, received messages are stored in memory and not printed automatically. When a message is received in Memory Lock mode, the **Confidential File** indicator blinks. To print this message, enter the Memory Lock ID. A user who does not know the ID cannot print the message. This prevents an unauthorized person from seeing the message.

To use Memory Lock, program the Memory Lock ID and switch it on.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trar	ns.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mod	le] [Info.

🖉 Note

- □ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

	User Tools Counter		Receive File Facsimile Error TX File Statu	
	[F1] [F2] [F3] [F4
$\left(\right)$	01	02	03	04
\square	Δ	l R		ZAAS120E

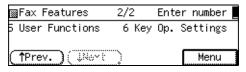
Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools∣	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System 🔅	2 Copier	3 Fax
4 !	5	
Counter La	nguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



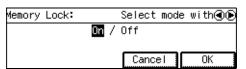
🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Memory Lock" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter	number _
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI	
D3 Memory Lock	04	Counters	3
(↑Prov.) ↓Next)		PrevMenu

Switch Memory Lock on or off using the ④ or ⑤ key and press [OK].



🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, Memory Lock is not switched on and the display shown in step **5** appears again.

2 Press [PrevMenu].

Bress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Counters

This function allows you to check the total number of pages transmitted and received on the display.

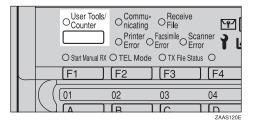
- Transmissions: Total number of transmitted pages
- Receptions: Total number of received pages
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	orig	inals.	Ente	er	fax	no.
Memory Tran	s.					1	100%
163 DI				Des	t:	0	
			Mode			Info).

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



3 Enter the code for "Fax".

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

7

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

¡Fax Features	2/2	Ent	er number 📕
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(\supset		Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Counters" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	1/5	Enter number 💻
D1 Personal Code	02	RTI/TTI
D3 Memory Lock	-04	Counters
(îPrev.) ↓Ne xt)	PrevMenu

The totals are displayed.

When you have checked the totals, press [OK].

Counters:	Pages	sent	or	receive	ed to) date
Tran	smissio	ons	13	33 pages	s	
Receptions			22	25 pages	8	
				1	0	IK 🛛

Press [PrevMenu].

Press the [User Tools/Counter]

key.

Monitor Volume

You can change the volume of the following sounds the machine makes.

On Hook

When you press the **[On Hook Dial]** key.

Transmission

When the machine send a message.

Reception

When the machine receive a message.

Dialing

After pressing the **[Start]** key, this sound is output until the line connects to the destination.

Printing

Sounds when a received message has been printed. \Rightarrow P.64 "Print Completion Beep"

Limitation

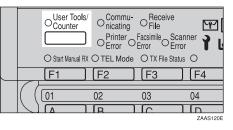
- Monitor Volume is not available with G4 or the optional extra G3 Interface Unit.
- Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax r	no.
Memory Tran:	з.			10	00%
163 DI			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Info.	

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



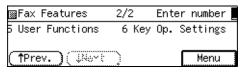
Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	inguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Monitor Volume" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	2/5	Enter	number 📃
D5 Monitor Volume	06	Economy	TΧ
07 ID Code	08	Multist	ep Transf
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Monitor Volume" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Select an item you want to adjust pressing [↑Prev.] and [↓Next].

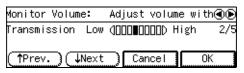
🖉 Note

On Hook, Transmission, Reception, Dialing, and Printing are shown in that order.

On Hook

Monitor Volume:	Adjust volume with 👁 🕞
On Hook Low	(0000∎000) High 1/5
(≜erev.) ↓Ne xt	Cancel OK

Transmission



Reception

Monitor Volume:	Adjust volume with 🖲 🕞
Reception Low	(000∎0000) High 3/5
(†Prev.)(↓Next	

Dialing

Monitor Volume:	Adjust volume with 🖲 🕞
Dialing Low	(1000-0000) High 4/5
(↑Prev.)(↓Next	Cancel OK

Printing

Monitor Volume:	Adjust volume wi	th 🛈 🕞
Printing Low	(1000∎0000) High	5/5
(†Prev.)(UNANT	Cancel (ЭК

Monitor	Volum	е:	Adjust	volume	wi th@	00
On	Hook	Low		100D Hi	gh	1/5
(† Prov.	ि	Next	Car	ncel	OK	

🖉 Note

□ When you press **[Cancel]**, the volume setting is canceled and the display shown in step **9** appears again.

 \Box Lowest = OFF

8 Press [PrevMenu].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering The Economy Transmission Time

Economy Transmission allow you to take advantage of off-peak line rates by delaying transmission of messages until a later time.

Use the procedure below to program the Economy Transmission Time for when you phone rates are cheaper. \Rightarrow P.74 "SEND LATER"

Limitation

You can program only one Economy Transmission time.

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set originals.	Ente	r fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
163 DI:_		Dest	: 0
	Mode	e][Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

	User Tools Counter			Scanner Error
	(F1	F2] [F3] [F4
	01	02	03	04
$\left \right\rangle$	Δ	L R		

ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Enter	r number 🔤
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op. 3	Settings
(Prev.)			Menu

🖉 Note

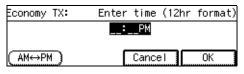
□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Economy TX" code with the number keys.

ﷺKey Op. Settings 2/5 Enter number D5 Monitor Volume O6 Economy TX D7 ID Code O8 Multistep Transf (↑Prev.) (↓Next) PrevMenu]

🖉 Note

- □ If "Economy TX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **⊡** Enter the Economy Transmission time with the number keys and press [OK]. To change AM/PM, press [AM↔PM] (North America only).



🖉 Note

- When changing the time, select AM or PM before entering the time.
- □ If you press **[Cancel]**, the entered time is canceled and the display shown in step **9** appears again.
- Press [PrevMenu].
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

ID Code

Use this procedure to register the following kinds of ID codes.

Confidential ID

This ID is usually required for printing a message received in the Confidential Reception. \Rightarrow P.109 "PRINTING A CONFIDENTIAL MESSAGE"

Polling ID

This ID is required for using Transfer Request (P.93 "TRANSFER RE-QUEST"), Transfer Station (P.60 "Transfer Station"), Default ID Polling Transmission (P.88 "POLLING TRANSMISSION"), Default ID Polling Reception (P.91 "POLLING RECEPTION"), ID Transmission (P.52 "ID Transmission (Closed Network)"), ID Reception (P.61 "ID Reception (Closed Network)") functions.

Memory Lock ID

This ID is required for printing a message received using Memory Lock. \Rightarrow P.111 "PRINTING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMORY LOCK"

Limitation

When you use Transfer Request, Transfer Station, or ID Transmission, register the same ID code as that registered on the sender's machine.

🖉 Note

- A Polling ID can be any combination of digits (0 9) and letters (A F) except for 0000 and FFFF.
- □ A Confidential ID and Memory Lock ID can be any a four digit numeric code except for 0000.

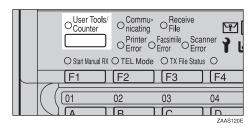
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	IS.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number 🔤
5 User Functions	6 Key	Ор.	Settings
(Prev.)			Menu

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the number for "ID Code" with the number keys.

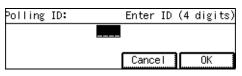
⊠Key Op. Settings	2/5	Enter number 💻
D5 Monitor Volume	06	Economy TX
D7 ID Code	08	Multistep Transf
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

- □ If "ID Code" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Choose the ID you wish to program with the number keys.

📓 ID Code	Enter number
1 Confidential ID B Memory Lock ID	2 Polling ID
D Momory Look ID	PrevMenu

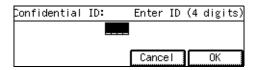
2 Enter an ID code and press [OK].



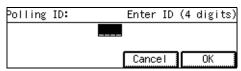
🖉 Note

- □ For a Confidential ID and a Memory Lock ID, use the number keys to enter an ID code. For a Polling ID, use the number keys and letter keys (A to F).
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter a correct code.
- □ If you press **[Cancel]**, the entered ID is canceled.

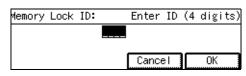
Confidential ID



Polling ID



Memory Lock ID



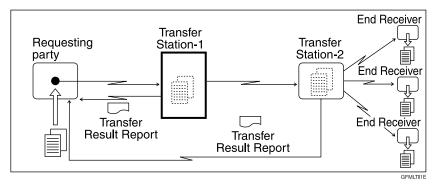
- 8 Press [PrevMenu] twice.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Multistep Transfer

This machine can be used to build up a multi-step facsimile network that allows messages to be sent via multiple Transfer Stations and achieve greater efficiency in processing Transfer Requests.

The Polling IDs of all parties involved in the multi-step transfer must be identical.

The following procedure describes how to enter the multi-step transfer station (the 2nd transfer station) number. Providing a Group contains the appropriate End Receiver Information, when your machine receives a Transfer Request, it will pass the message to the Transfer Station(s) you specify. For how to program the appropriate End Receiver Information, see P.134 *"Registering End Receivers for Multi-step Transfer"*.



Limitation

- The requesting party's fax number must be stored in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial in all transfer stations (the 1st transfer station and the 2nd transfer station) for this feature to work.
- □ All parties must store their own number for the Transfer Report or this feature will not work. ⇒ P.198 "Transfer Report"
- □ The multi-step transfer end receiver must be stored in a Group in the 2nd transfer station beforehand.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode	e [_	Info) .]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

	User Tools/ Counter	O Error C	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Status	
	(F1)	F2	F3	[F4
	01	02	03	04
\square		R		ZAAS120E

3 Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	nguage	[Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

⊠Fax Features	2/2	Enter	r number _
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op. 3	Settings
(TPrev.) (LNovi			Menu
(†Prev.)(UNANT			menu

Solution Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Multistep Transf" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	2/5	Enter	number 💻
D5 Monitor Volume	06	Economy	TΧ
D7 ID Code	08	Multiste	ep Transf
(†Prev.) (↓Next)	1	PrevMenu

Note

□ If "Multistep Transf" is not shown, press [**↑Prev.**] or [**↓Next**].

b Enter the number of the Group in which the End Receiver is registered with the number keys.

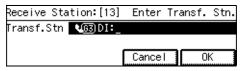
Multistep Transf:	
Enter number to register, or c	neck
βtatus 🛛 Group Dial(01-30) 🌉	
Status	PrevMenu

\mathcal{P} Reference

P.134 "Registering End Receivers for Multi-step Transfer"

□ You can press **[Status]** to see the current status of the Group.

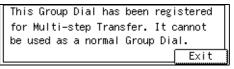
2 Specify a Transfer Station.



🖉 Note

- □ Enter the Transfer Station's fax number using a Quick Dial key, Speed Dial or the number keys. ⇒ P.47 "Quick Dials", P.48 "Speed Dials", P.44 "Number Keys"
- □ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter the correct number.
- □ If you press **[Cancel]**, the setting is canceled and the display show in step **[**] appears again.

8 Press [Exit].



9 Press [Exit].

D Press [PrevMenu] twice.

W Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)

Special Reception numbers (Special RX Nos.) allow you to treat incoming messages from certain locations differently.

For example, you might want messages from your branch offices printed on a different color paper to identity them at a glance. In this case, program the branch office RTI/CSIs as Specific Senders and select a paper tray loaded with colored paper. Multi-copy (Number of prints setting)⇒ P.65 "Multi-copy Reception" You can have several copies of messages printed.

Cassette Select (tray from which messages are printed)⇒ P.213 "Paper Feed Selection"
 You can choose the paper cassette used when printing messages. If you set different color paper in this cassette, you will be able to recognize messages from certain senders at a glance.

7

- If you receive a fax with a paper size different from that set in the paper cassette, the printout will be split across several pages or reduced to fit on the paper.
- □ If you choose the optional Bypass Feed Tray, make sure the size you programmed for this tray matches the paper size in this tray. For more details, see P.15 "Acceptable Original Sizes".
- Memory Lock ⇒ P.111 "PRINT-ING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMORY LOCK" You can have messages received into memory.
- 2-Sided Printing (optional Duplex Unit required) ⇒ P.65 "2-Sided Printing"

Print on both sides of the paper.

 Reverse Order Printing ⇒ P.68 *"Reverse Order Printing"* You can have pages printed in the opposite order in which they were received.

You can adjust the following settings for this function:

- Specified Senders (maximum of 30, up to 20 characters each with G3, up to 24 characters each with G4) ⇒ P.186 "Authorized *Reception*"
- Wildcards \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Sender/Specified Number list and keep it when you register or change a sender. ⇒ P.154 "RE-PORTS/LISTS"

Limitation

- The Special Reception Numbers function cannot used to treat messages received from a Specific Senders if they are received with Polling Reception or Free Polling.
- □ You cannot register a Specific Sender who does not have an RTI or CSI.
- □ You can register up to 30 senders for Forwarding, Special Reception Numbers, and Authorized Reception functions. You sometimes cannot register 30 senders depending on the number of senders registered with other functions (up to 50 senders with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed). ⇒ P.190 "Forwarding", P.186 "Authorized Reception"

🖉 Note

- To register a sender, use an RTI or CSI. When you communicate with a sender using G4, register a G4 TID
- You can find the RTI or CSI of a sender by looking in the destination name column of the TCR
- □ Before using the Special RX Nos. function, switch this function to On by following the steps shown in Initial Setup RX. ⇒ P.158 "INI-TIAL SETUP RX"

Registering Specific Senders (Special RX Nos.)

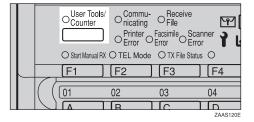
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
63 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Enter	number
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op. S	ettings
(↑Prev.) (↓Xovt		[Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Special RX Nos." code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number į	
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authoriz	ed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	(PrevMenu	u

🖉 Note

- □ If "Special RX Nos." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the "Register Sender" code with the number keys.

⊠Special RX Nos.	Enter number
1 Register Sender 3 Print Sender List	2 Delete Sender
	PrevMenu

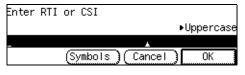
Choose a number where you want to program a Specific Sender.

Register Sender:	Enter	no.to	register 💻
D1 ABC COMPANY	02	HONG I	Kong
D3 PARIS OFFICE	04		
(Three,)(UNevi	()		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and reenter a correct value. If you enter a wrong value for the second digit, press **[Cancel]** and enter it again.

Press [RTI/CSI].



Enter an RTI or CSI of a sender and press [OK].

Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

D Select whether or not to register the sender as a wild card. \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"

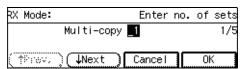
] [Do	you	want	to	register	a	Wildcar	3 ?
					Yes	3	N N)

Press [RX Mode].

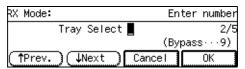
Register Sender:	Press RTI	/CSI or RX				
Sender[04]		Wild Card				
RTI/CSI :LONDON OFFICE						
RTI/CSI RX Mode	Cancel	OK				

Delect any features for this Specific Sender. You can scroll through them by pressing [\uparrow Prev.] or [\downarrow Next]. Then press [OK].

Multi-copy



Tray Select



Memory Lock

RX Mode:	Select mode w	/ith⊛⊛
Memory Lock	: On / <mark>Off</mark>	3/5
(↑Prev.)(↓Next) Cancel	OK

Reverse Printing

RX Mode:	Select mode	with 👁 🕞
Reverse Printing	: On / <mark>Off</mark>	4/5
(↑Prev.)(↓Next) Cancel	OK

2-Sided Printing

RX Mode:	Select mode	wi th 👁 🕞
2-Sided Printing	: On / <mark>Off</mark>	5/5
(↑Prev.) (JAG~)	Cancel	OK

Note Note

- □ Select only items you want to change.
- □ If you press [Cancel], the specified setting are canceled and the display shown in step **1** appears again.
- B Press [OK].

Press [OK].

Register Sender:	Press RTI	/CSI or RX
Sender[04]		Wild Card
RTI/CSI :LONDON OFF	ICE	
RTI/CSI RX Mode	Cancel	OK

Dress [Exit].



Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

D Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Specific Sender



1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mod	e] [Info.

Note 🖉

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the [Facsimile] key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

		User Tools, Counter	O Error C	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		F1	F2	F3] [F4
		01	02	03	04
	\square		R		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

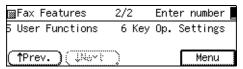
∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	anguage	. [Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

${}^{\mathcal{P}}$ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

 \Box If "Key Op. Settings or [**\Next**].

Enter the "Special RX Nos." code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number 🔤
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authori:	zed RX
11 Forwarding	12	ECM	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Special RX Nos." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

6 Enter the "Delete Sender" code with the number keys.

⊠Special RX Nos.	Enter number
1 Register Sender	2 Delete Sender
3 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

2 Choose a sender number you want to delete by entering its code with the number keys.

Delete Sender:	Enter no. to delete 💻
D1 ABC COMPANY	02 HONG KONG
D3 PARIS OFFICE	04 LONDON OFFICE
(18767) (1867)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter a correct value.

B Press [Yes].

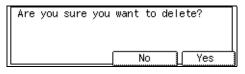
Delete Sender:		Delete ?
Sender[01]		
RTI/CSI :ABC COMPAN	NY	
[RT1/CS1]]	No	Yes

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **J** appears again.

9 Press [Yes].

The sender is deleted.



🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **9** appears again.

Dress [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Specified Sender List

Print this list to see the currently programmed Specific Senders.

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tr	ans.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

	O Start Manual R	⊖ Printer Error ⊂	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
	(F1)	[F2) (F3] [F4
$\left \right $		00	00	0.4
		02	03	04
	Δ	IR		ZAAS120E

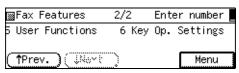
Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tool:	s Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter][Language	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Special RX Nos." code with the number keys.

∭Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number	
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authori:	zed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMe	nu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Special RX Nos." is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the "Print Sender List" code with the number keys.



2 Press the **[Start]** key.

When the printing job is completed, the display shown in step **1** appears again.

To print Sender/Special Reception Numbers List, press Start key.

Cancel

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, printing stops and the display shown in step **□** appears again.

Bress [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

185

Authorized Reception

This feature helps you to reject junk mail. It lets you specify which terminals you wish to receive fax messages from; the others will be shut out. This is useful if you are very annoyed with someone.

You can register the following:

- 30 Specified Senders (up to 20 characters for each sender with G3, 24 characters with G4)
- Wild Card \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Sender/Authorized Reception list and keep it when you register or change a sender. ⇒ P.154 "RE-PORTS/LISTS"

Limitation

- You cannot register a Specified Sender who does not have an RTI or CSI.
- □ You can register up to 30 senders for Forwarding, Special Reception Numbers, and Authorized Reception functions. You sometimes cannot register 30 senders depending on the number of senders registered with other functions (up to 50 senders with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed). ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)", P.186 "Authorized Reception"

🖉 Note

- □ To register a sender, use an RTI or CSI. If you communicate with a sender using G4, register the G4 TID.
- □ To find out a senders RTI/CSI, check the TCR.

- □ You need to switch Authorized Reception on. \Rightarrow P.158 "INITIAL SET-UP RX"
- □ You can specify whether to receive messages from only Specified Senders or to exclude messages from Specified Senders. The default setting is "Receive from Authorized Senders". ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

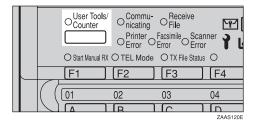
Programming Specified Senders

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

- □ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.
- **2** Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] [anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

7

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number _
5 User Functions	6 Key	Ор.	Settings
(Prev.)			Menu

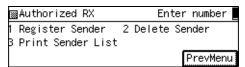
🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Authorized RX" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number	
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authoria	zed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMer	nu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Authorized RX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the "Register Sender" code with the number keys.



2 Choose a sender number you wish to register.

Register	Sender:	Enter	no.to	register	H
p1		ΰŻ			
33		04			
(throw,)(1444			PrevMer	nu

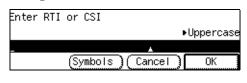
🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and reenter a correct value.

Press [RTI/CSI].

Register Sender:	Press RTI/CSI
Sender[01]	
RTI/CSI	Cancel OK

Enter an RTI or CSI of a sender and press [OK].



Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

 $\blacksquare Select whether or not to register the sender as a wild card. \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"$

Γ	Do	you	want	to	register	a	Wildo	ard	?
					Yes	3		No	

Press [OK].

Register S	ender: Pr	ress RTI/CS	SI,Receiver
Sender[01]			Wild Card
RTI/CSI :M	MAIN OFFICE	E	
RTI/CSI	Receiver	Cancel	OK

Press [Exit].

Registered: Sender. Exit

- Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Specific Sender (Authorized Reception)

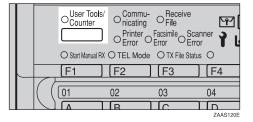
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	s.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

⊠Fax Features	2/2	Enter	number 📕
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op. S	ettings
		_	
(↑Prev.)(Ukkovt	<u>)</u>	[Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Authorized RX" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter n	umber 📃
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authorize	ed RX
11 Forwarding	12	ECM	
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	F	'revMenu

Solution Note

- □ If "Authorized RX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the "Delete Sender" code with the number keys.



Choose the sender to delete by entering its code. The RTI/CSI will flash up.

Delete Sender:	Enter	no.	to	delete	
D1 ATLANTA OFFICE					
(†Prev,)(UMert				PrevMen	ш

🖉 Note

If you make a mistake, press the [Clear/Stop]key and enter a correct number.

Press [Yes].

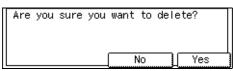
Delete Sender:	Delete ?
Sender[01]	Wild Card
RTI/CSI :ATLANTA OFFICE	
NO NO	Yes

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **2** appears again.

Press [Yes].

The sender is deleted.



🔗 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **J** appears again.

D Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Sender/Authorized Reception List

Print this list to find out which Specific Senders are currently programmed.

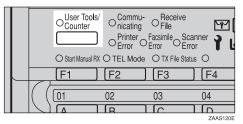
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals	. Ente	r fa×	no.
Memory Trans	з.				100%
€ <u>63</u> DI:_			Dest	: 0	
		Mo	de	Inf	o.]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax".

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number 📕
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(TPrev.) (UNOVE	\supset		Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- **5** Enter the "Authorized RX" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number 📃
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authoriz	ed RX
11 Forwarding	12	ECM	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)]	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Authorized RX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

6 Enter the "Print Sender List" code with the number keys.

⊠Authorized RX	Enter number
1 Register Sender	2 Delete Sender
3 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

2 Press the **[Start]** key.

```
To print Sender/Authorised Reception
List, press Start key.
Cancel
```

🖉 Note

□ When you press **[Cancel]**, the printing stops and the display shown in step **4** appears again.

8 Press [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Forwarding

Using this feature, you can select messages from Specified Senders to be printed on your machine and then sent on to another fax machine.

This is useful if, for example, you are visiting another office and would like a copy of your messages sent to that office so you can read them.

In this section, the machines that messages are forwarded to are referred to as Forwarding Stations. The locations from which you would like messages forwarded from are referred to as Specific Senders.

You can register:

- 5 Forwarding Stations (up to 32 digits for each number)
- 30 Specific Senders (maximum 10 per Forwarding Station, up to 20 characters each with G3 and 24 with G4)
- Wild Cards \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"

∰Important

□ We recommend that you print the Forwarding/Sender list and keep it when you register or change a receiver or sender. \Rightarrow P.154 "*RE*-*PORTS/LISTS*"

Limitation

- This feature only works if the incoming message is from another party that has been programmed as a Specific Sender.
- The Forwarding function does not forward messages received with Confidential Reception, Memory Lock, Polling Reception mode, or messages received by Transfer Request.
- □ You cannot register a sender who does not have an RTI or CSI.
- □ You can register up to 30 senders for Forwarding, Special Reception Numbers, and Authorized Reception functions. You sometimes cannot register 30 senders depending on the number of senders registered with other functions (up to 50 senders with optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit installed). ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)", P.186 "Authorized Reception"

🖉 Note

- □ You can print a forwarding mark on forward messages. ⇒ P.211 "Printing the User Parameter List"
- To register a sender, use an RTI or CSI. When you communicate with a sender using G4, register the G4 TID.
- You can find out the RTI or CSI of a sender by looking in the destination name column of the TCR.
- □ Before using the Forwarding function, register Forwarding Stations and select the messages to forward. ⇒ P.158 "INITIAL SETUP RX"

- □ You can specify whether or not to send received messages on to another fax machine automatically. This feature is called "Forwarding". The default setting is off.⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
- □ You can specify whether or not to print forwarded messages. This feature is called "Local Printing". The default setting is on. ⇒ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

Registering Forwarding Stations

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
63 DI:_		Dest:	0
	Mod	e	Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

	Ounter Ocounter		Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Status	
	[F1]	[F2]	[F3]	[F4
	01	02	03	04
	Δ	IR		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter] La	anguage		Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number 📕
5 User Functions	6 Key	Ор.	Settings
(†Prev.) (UNGY)			Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Forwarding" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings 3/5 Enter number D9 Special RX Nos. 10 Authorized RX 11 Forwarding 12 ECM (↑Prev.) (↓Next) PrevMenu]

🖉 Note

- □ If "Forwarding" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the "Reg. Receiver" code with the number keys.

∭Forwarding	Enter number
1 Reg. Receiver	2 Delete Receiver
3 Register Sender	4 Delete Sender
5 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

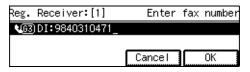
2 Choose a receiver (Forwarding Station) to program be entering the its code number.

Reg. Receiver:	Enter no.to register
1	2
з	4
5	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press [Cancel] and enter a correct number.

Enter the Forwarding Station's fax number with the number keys.



🖉 Note

- If you make a mistake, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter a correct number.
- □ If you have the optional ISDN Unit or optional extra G3 Interface Unit, select the line type to be used before specifying a fax number. ⇒ P.41 "CHANGING THE LINE TYPE"

9 Press [OK].

DPress [Exit].

Registered: Receiver[1]

🛍 Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Exit

Deleting a Forwarding Station

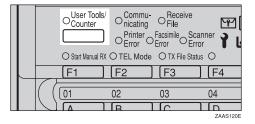
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trar	ns.			100%
63 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode	e] [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax".

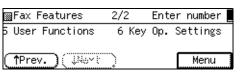
⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

₽ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



Solution Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- **5** Enter the function number for "Forwarding" with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number	
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authoriz	ed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	(PrevMen	u

🖉 Note

□ If "Forwarding" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

6 Enter the "Delete Receiver" code with the number keys.

⊠Forwarding	Enter number
1 Reg. Receiver	2 Delete Receiver
β Register Sender	4 Delete Sender
5 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

Choose the receiver (Forwarding Station) to delete by entering its code number.

Delete Receiver:	Enter no. to delete
1 9840310471	2 9266047131
з	4
Б	PrevMenu

Note 🖉

□ If you make a mistake, press [No] and enter a correct number.

Press [Yes].

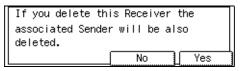
Delete Receiver:[2]			Delete	?
163 DI: 9266047131				
_				
	No	- 11	Yes	

Note 🖉

□ If you press **[No]**, the Forwarding Station is not deleted and the display shown in step **5** appears again.

Press [Yes].

The Forwarding Station is deleted.



Note 🖉

□ When you press [No], the Forwarding Station is not deleted and the display shown in step **5** appears again.

Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Dress the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering Specific Senders (Forwarding)

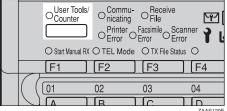
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Trans	s.			100%
€ <u>63</u> DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

Note 🖉

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the [Facsimile] key.

2 Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

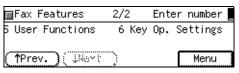
⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Forwarding" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number	-
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authori:	zed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMer	nu

Delete Receiver

🖉 Note

□ If "Forwarding" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Enter the "Register Sender" code with the number keys.

⊠Forwarding	Enter number
1 Reg. Receiver	2 Delete Receiver
3 Register Sender	4 Delete Sender
5 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

Choose a Specific Sender to register by entering its code number.

Register Sender:	Enter	no.to	register
þ1	ΰŻ		
33	04		
(TProv.)(JNov			PrevMenu

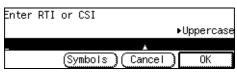
🖉 Note

□ If you make a mistake, press the **[Clear/Stop]** key and enter a correct number.

Press [RTI/CSI].

Register S	Sender: I	Press	RTI/C	SI,Re	ceiver
Sender[01]					
RTI/CSI	Receive	r] C	ancel		ОК

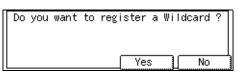
Register an RTI or CSI of a sender and press [OK].



₽ Reference

P.215 "Entering Text"

 $\blacksquare Select whether or not to register a sender as a wild card. \Rightarrow P.215 "Wild Cards"$



Press [Receiver].

Register Sender: Pr	ess RTI/CSI,Receiver
Sender[O1]	Wild Card
RTI/CSI :MAIN OFFICE	
RTI/CSI Receiver	Cancel OK

Choose the Forwarding Station you want to assign this Specific Sender to: enter its code number and press [OK].

End Receiver:		Enter	number
Receiver 📕 1 9840310	471 2	926604	47131
3	4		
5	Cance		OK

B Press [OK].

Register Sender: Pr	ess RTI/CSI,Receiver
Sender[01]	Wild Card
RTI/CSI :MAIN OFFICE	
RTI/CSI Receiver	Cancel OK

🖉 Note

 If you press [Cancel], the sender is not registered and the display shown in step 2 appears again.

Press [Exit].



- Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Specific Sender (Forwarding)

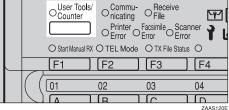
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran	ns.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

4 Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number 🔤
5 User Functions	6 Key	0p. 3	Settings
(↑Prev.) (↓No~t	\sim		Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the function number for "Forwarding" with the number keys.

∭ k	<ey< th=""><th>Op.</th><th>Set</th><th>tings</th><th>3/5</th><th>Enter</th><th>number</th><th></th></ey<>	Op.	Set	tings	3/5	Enter	number	
					10	Authoria	zed RX	
11	For	rward	ling		12	ECM		
\Box	† Pre	ev.)) 🕕	Next)		PrevMer	nu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Forwarding" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the "Delete Sender" code with the number keys.

⊠Forwarding	Enter number
1 Reg. Receiver	2 Delete Receiver
3 Register Sender	4 Delete Sender
5 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

2 Choose the Specified Sender you want to delete by entering its code with the number keys.

Delete Sender:	Enter	no.	to delete 💻
D1 MAIN OFFICE			
(ffrev,)(JMert			PrevMenu

🔗 Note

- If you make a mistake, press the [Clear/Stop] key and enter a correct number.
- □ If you have a mistake with the second digit, press **[No]** and enter the number again.

8 Press [Yes].

Delete Sender:	Delete ?
Sender[01]	Wild Card
RTI/CSI :MAIN OFFICE	
RT1/CC1	No Yes

195

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **2** appears again.

Press [Yes].

The sender is deleted.

Are	you	sure	you	want	to	delet	e?	
				N	lo		Yes	

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[No]**, the sender is not deleted and the display shown in step **9** appears again.

D Press [PrevMenu] 3 times.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Specified Sender/Forwarding Station list

Print this list to find out which Specific Senders are assigned to which Forwarding Stations.

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set o	riginals.	Ente	er fa	x no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
63 DI :			Dest	: 0	
		Mod	e	In	fo.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

		User Tools Counter		Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		[F1] [F2] [F3) (F4
	$\left(\left(\right) \right)$	01	02	03	04
	\square	Δ) [R		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Enter	number _
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op. S	ettings
(†Prev.) (UNOV)		[Menu

🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

5 Enter the "Forwarding" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter	number	
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authoria	zed RX	
11 Forwarding	12	ECM		
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMer	nu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Forwarding" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- **6** Enter the "Print Sender List" code with the number keys.

⊠Forwarding	Enter number
1 Reg. Receiver	2 Delete Receiver
β Register Sender	4 Delete Sender
5 Print Sender List	PrevMenu

2 Press the [Start] key.

```
To print Sender/Forwarding List,
press Start key.
Cancel
```

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, the printing stops.

8 Press [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

ECM

If a part of a transmission fails because of a line problem, the lost data is automatically resent. For this feature to work, the other machine must have ECM. By default, ECM is turned on, but you can change this with the following procedure.

Limitation

- If you turn ECM off, you cannot use the following features:
 - JBIG Transmission
 - Super G3 Communication

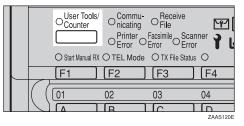
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ins.			100%
63 DI :			Dest:	0
		Mod	e [Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

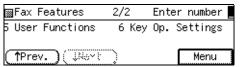
∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System 4	2 Copier 5	3 Fax
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

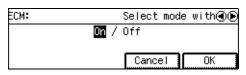
□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "ECM" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	3/5	Enter i	number 💻
D9 Special RX Nos.	10	Authorize	ed RX
11 Forwarding	12	ECM	
(↑Prev.) (↓Next	[PrevMenu	

🖉 Note

□ If "ECM" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].



🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the previous setting is not changed and the display shown in step **□** appears again.

2 Press [PrevMenu].

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Transfer Report

For the requesting party to be able to receive Transfer Result Reports from the Transfer Station, the requesting party must store the number of the telephone line their machine is connected to in their own machine. \Rightarrow P.93 "TRANSFER REQUEST", P.178 "Multistep Transfer"

Be sure to insert a pause after the area code.

For example, if you are in the United States and your fax number is 212-1234567, store the following:

• 1212-1234567

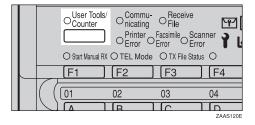
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax	no.
Memory Tr	ans.				100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0	
		Mode		Inf) .]

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

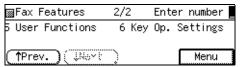
⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" code with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Transfer Report" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	4/5	Enter number 💻
13 Transfer Report	14	G3 analog Line
15 G3 Digital Line	16	G4 Digital Line
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Transfer Report" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Storing Your Own PSTN G3 Fax Number

Enter the "G3 Direct Number" code with the number keys.

⊠Transfer Report	Enter number
1 G3 Direct Number 3 G4 Fax Number	2.63 PA8X, Number
	PrevMenu

2 Enter your own fax number with the number keys.

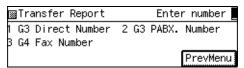
G3 Direct Number:	Enter	own	number
æ _			
	Cancel		ОК

3 Press [OK].

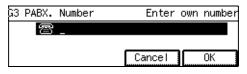
Storing Your G3 PABX Number

If you wish to store your G3 PABX number, contact your service representative.

• Enter the "G3 PABX. Number" code with the number keys.



2 Enter your own fax number with the number keys.



3 Press [OK].

Storing a G4 Fax Number

• Enter the "G4 Fax Number" code with the number keys.

⊠Transfer Report	Enter number
1 G3 Direct Number 3 G4 Fax Number	2.63 PASK, Number
	PrevMenu

2 Enter your own fax number with the number keys.

G4 Fax Number:	Enter own	number
æ _		
	Cancel	ОК

• Press [OK].

- **6** Press [PrevMenu] twice.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

G3 Analog Line

This function must be set up before you connect the machine to a G3 analog line.

You can register the following items with a G3 analog Line:

- PSTN Line Type (Dial Pulse/Tone)
- CSI (up to 20 digits)

🔗 Note

- A CSI (Called Station Identification) is notified to a receiver or sender when you send or receive a fax. When the CSI is received, it is shown on the display or printed in a report by the receiver's or sender's machine. The CSI works even if the receiver or sender uses a different make machine.
- The CSI can contain numerals, a plus sign (+), and spaces. You usually should register your country code, area code (minus the leading zero) and your fax number in that order.

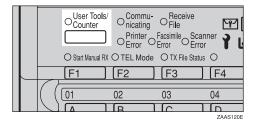
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran:	з.			100%
163 DI:_			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

P Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	er number
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(† Prev.)	<u>`</u>		Menu

🔗 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "G3 Analog Line" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	4/5	Enter number 💻
13 Transfer Report	14	G3 analog Line
15 Date/Time	16	User Parameters
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	PrevMenu

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, enter the "G3-1 analog Line" or "G3-2 analog Line" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings 4/5	
13 Transfer Report 14	
15 G3-2 analog Line 16	G3 Digital Line
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

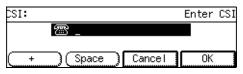
□ If appropriate display is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

To enter the CSI

• Enter the "CSI" code with the number keys.

∭G3 analog Line	Enter number
1 CSI	2 PSTN Line Type
	PrevMenu

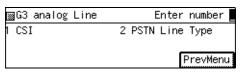
2 Enter the CSI.



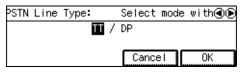
3 Press [OK].

To Select the PSTN Line Type

• Enter the "PSTN Line Type" code with the number keys.



2 Select the desired line type.



• Press [OK]

6 Press [PrevMenu] twice.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

G3 Digital Line

This function must be set when you connect the machine to an ISDN G3 digital line.

You can register the following items.

- CSI (up to 20 digits) ⇒ P.200 "G3 Analog Line"
- Own Fax Number (up to 20 digits)
- Subaddress \Rightarrow P.46 "Subaddress"

🖉 Note

- □ Optional ISDN Unit required.
- □ You need to register a CSI and your own digital number. ⇒ P.200 "G3 Analog Line"
- □ If you wish to change your subaddress, contact your service representative.
- □ Program a User Function key for the subaddress function. ⇒ P.46 "Subaddress"
- Store the telephone number of your PSTN line as "Own Fax Number 1". If you use two numbers for the same line, store the second number as "Own Fax Number 2".
- **1** Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set origin	als. Ent	er fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.		100%
63 DI:_		Des	t: 0
		Mode	Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

		User Tools Counter		nmu- Ating Facsimile Ther Facsimile Sor Error	rror
		[F1) (F2) (F3) (F4
	\bigcap	01	00	03	0.4
	$ \langle \rangle $		02	03	04
			I I R		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

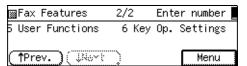
∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter	number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	anguage	ĺ	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "G3 Digital Line" code with the number keys.

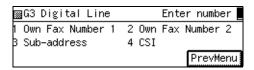
∭Key Op. Settings	4/5	Enter number 💻
13 Transfer Report	14	G3 analog Line
15 G3 Digital Line	16	G4 Digital Line
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)	PrevMenu

🖉 Note

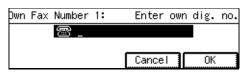
□ If "G3 Digital Line" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

To enter the Own Fax Number

Enter the "Own Fax Number 1" or "Own Fax Number 2" code with the number keys.



2 Enter your own fax number with the number keys and press [OK].

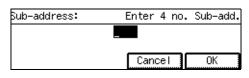


To Enter the Sub-address

Enter the "Sub-address" code with the number keys.

⊠G3 Digital Line	Enter number
1 Own Fax Number 1	2 Own Fax Number 2
3 Sub-address	4 CSI
	PrevMenu

2 Enter the subaddress and press [OK]

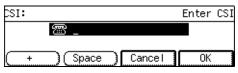


To Enter the CSI

• Enter the number for "CSI" with the number keys.

⊠G3 Digital Line	Enter number
1 Own Fax Number 1	2 Own Fax Number 2
3 Sub-address	4 CSI
	PrevMenu

2 Enter the CSI and press [OK].



O Press [PrevMenu] twice.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

G4 Digital Line

This function must be set when you connect the machine to the ISDN digital line.

You can register the following items:

- TID (up to 22 digits)
- Own Fax Number (up to 20 digits)
- Subaddress ⇒ P.46 "Subaddress"

🖉 Note

- □ Optional ISDN Unit required.
- You can use a G4 TID if you use the ISDN. The G4 TID is information to be printed on a destination machine when you send a fax using G4 down the ISDN.

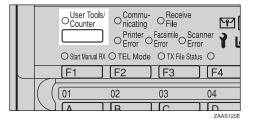
Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tran:	з.			100%
163 DI			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.

∭Fax Features	2/2	Ente	r number
5 User Functions	6 Key	Op.	Settings
(†Prev.) (1864)	~		Menu

🔗 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "G4 Digital Line" code with the number keys.

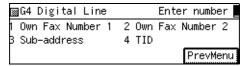
⊠Key Op. Settings	5/5	Enter	number 📃
17 G4 Digital Line			
19 User Parameters	20	Prt.U.Pa	arameters
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

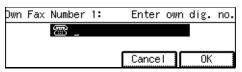
□ If "G4 Digital Line" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

To Enter the Your Own Digital Number

1 Enter the "Own Digital Number" code with the number keys.



2 Enter your fax number and press [OK].

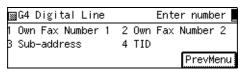


B Press [PrevMenu] three times.

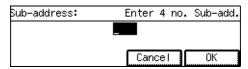
Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

To Enter the Subaddress

1 Enter the "Sub-address" code with the number keys.



2 Enter the subaddress.



✓ Reference

P.46 "Subaddress"

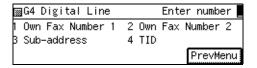
Press [OK].

Press [PrevMenu] three times.

5 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

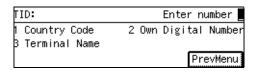
To Enter the TID

1 Enter the "TID" code with the number keys.

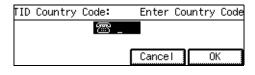


To Enter the Country Code

• Enter the "Country Code" code with the number keys.



2 Enter your Country Code with the number keys and press [OK].

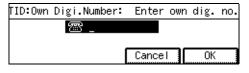


To Enter Your Own Digital Number

Enter the "Own Digital Number" code with the number keys.

TID:	Enter number
l Country Code β Terminal Name	2 Own Digital Number
	PrevMenu

2 Enter your own digital number and press [OK].



To Enter the Terminal Name

Enter the "Terminal Name" code with the number keys.

TID:	Enter number
1 Country Code 3 Terminal Name	2 Own Digital Number
	PrevMenu

2 Enter the Terminal Name and press [OK].

Enter Terminal	Name		
			▶Uppercase
_		*	
(A⇔a)(Syml	ools)	Cancel) ОК

2 Press [PrevMenu] three times.

E Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Date/Time

Use this function to set your machine's internal clock to the current time and date. This time is shown on the display, printed on pages and used for various features, such as Send Later.

If the current date and time are wrong, use this procedure to correct them.

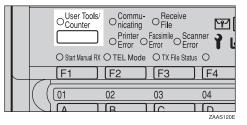
1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

⊖Ready	Set origin	nals. Ent	er	fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.			1	00%
163 DI:_		Des	t:	0	
		Mode		Info).

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.



Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

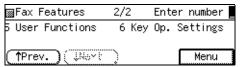
∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

□ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].

Enter the "Date/Time" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings	5/5	Enter	number 💻
17 G4 Digital Line	18	Date/Tim	ne
19 User Parameters	20	Prt.U.Pa	arameters
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)		PrevMenu

🖉 Note

□ If "Date/Time" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Select an item you want to change using the ④ or key, enter the month using [↑Prev.] or [↓Next] and enter the correct date or time with the number keys.

Date/Time:	Select with 🖲 🕞
[Mon] Sep. <mark>30</mark>	1999 05:08PM
	Cancel OK
	Cancer ; OK ;
Date/Time:	Select with 👁 🕞
Date/Time: [Mon] <mark>Sep.</mark> 30	Select with ®® 1999 05:08PM

🔗 Note

- □ When you enter a date, the day is set automatically.
- Depending on your area, your machine will either except the date in 12 hours format or 24 hours format.

7 Press [OK].

- 8 Press [PrevMenu].
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Changing the User Parameters

The User Parameters allow you to customize various settings to match your needs.

To change the function settings, set the user parameter switches.

Preparation

Access to some User Parameter Settings requires installation of optional equipment or that other settings be made beforehand.

🖓 Switches and Bits

User Parameters are divided into Switches and each switch is divided into eight bits. The right most bit is bit 0 and the left most is bit 7.

Switch 00	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
	\downarrow	\downarrow	\downarrow	\downarrow	\downarrow	\downarrow	\rightarrow	\downarrow
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

.

🖓 User Parameter List

The User Parameter switches are outlined below.

*: Default Settings

. •

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1			
00	0	Stamp home position	*Off	On			
	3, 2, 1	Image density adjustment level home position (the higher level, t greater image density)					
		*000: Auto Image Density, 001: L	evel 1 (lightest),				
		010: Level 2, 011: Level 3, 100: Le	vel 4, 101: Level 5 ,	,			
		110: Level 6, 111: Level 7 (darkes	t)				
01	0	Label Insertion home position	*Off	On			
	1	Closed Network home position	*Off	On			
	2	Auto Reduction home position	Off	*On			
	5	TTI Print home position	Off	*On			
	7	Return the machine to the home settings after each communica- tion (Return to default after transmission)	Off	*On			
02	0	Forwarding Mark	Off	*On			
	3	TSI Print	*Off	On			
	5	CIL Print	Off	*On			
	6	TID Print	*Off	On			
03	0	Automatic printing of the Mem- ory TX Result Report	Off	*On			
	2	Automatic printing of the Mem- ory Storage Report	*Off	On			
	3	Automatic printing of the Poll- ing RX Reserve Report	*Off	On			
	4	Automatic printing of the Poll- ing RX Result Report	Off	*On			
	5	Automatic printing of the Im- mediate TX Result Report	Off	*On			
	6	Automatic printing of the Poll- ing TX Clear Report	Off	*On			
	7	Automatic printing of the TCR	Off	*On			

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1
04	0	Automatic printing of the Con- fidential File Report	Off	*On
	7	Include a portion of the image on the Transmission Result Re- port (Memory Transmission), Memory Storage Report, Com- munication Failure Report, or Transfer Result Report(Inclu- sion of part of image)	Off	*On
05	0	Receive Service Call (SC) Con- dition (Substitute Reception during service call)	Possible (Substi- tute RX)	*Not possible (Reception off)
	2, 1	Receive when the machine can no printer error)	ot print (Substitute	reception during
		00: Enabled unconditionally (Fre	ee),	
		*01: Enabled for RTI/CSI is recei	ved,	
		10: Enabled for Polling ID match	1	
		11: Disabled (Reception off)		
	4	Personal Code Access	*Off	On
	5	Just Size Printing	*Off	On
	7	Empty cassette alert (Paper Empty Warning indication)	*Off	On
06	1	Fax communication mode home position (Line)	*G3	G4
	3, 2	G3 Line home position (G3)		
		*00: G3 Auto Select, 01: G3-1, 10:	G3-2 (option)	
	4	Dial Label Format	*Transparent la- bel sheet (Type 2)	Paper label sheet (Type 1)
	6	First page scanned for book originals	*From the left page	From the right page
07	2	Parallel Memory Transmission	Off	*On
08	2	Authorized Reception type	*Only receive from specified senders	Receive all mes- sages except those from spec- ified senders
10	1	Combine 2 Originals	*Off	On
	3	Page Reduction when printing	*Off	On

Switch	Bit	Item	0	1			
11	1	Send PB/UUI to ISDN	UUI	*PB			
	6	Local Print when Forwarding	Off	*On			
	7	Polling file after sending (Poll- ing transmission standby time)	*Delete (Use Once)	Standby (Save)			
14	0	Print documents received with Auto Power-On Reception (Night Printing mode)	*Immediate printing (Off)	When turning on the Opera- tion switch (On)			
	1	Long Document Transmission (Well Log)	*Off	On			
	2	Batch Transmission	Off	*On			
	3	Clear modes when function changed	*Off	On			
	7	System Parameter List TX	*Off	On			
15	2, 1, 0	Select paper feed tray to fix	•				
		*001: First, 010: Second, 011: Third,					
		100: 4th, 101: LCT					
	5	Fixed Input tray	On	*Off			
17	2	Whether you need to press [Add] after entering a Quick Dial/Speed Dial/Group Dial when broadcasting	*Not Necessary	Necessary			
18	0	Print date with TTI	Off	*On			
	1	Print transmitter origin with TTI	Off	*On			
	2	Print file number with TTI	Off	*On			
	3	Print page number with TTI	Off	*On			
19	0	Use paper delivery shift func- tion (Offset Print)	Off	*On			
	1	Sort TCR by line type	*Off	On			
	7,6						
		*00: Off, 01: G3-1, 10: G3-2 (optio	on), 11: G4 (option)				
24	1,0	Store a message in memory whic *00: Off, 01: Store for 24 hours, 12					
25	4	RDS	*Off	On			
	7	Summer Time	*Off	On			

. .

.

.

.

How to Change the User Parameters

- We recommend that you print the User Parameter list and keep it when you register or change a user parameter. ⇒ P.211 "Printing the User Parameter List"
- Do not change any bit switches other than those shown on the previous pages.
- Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er fa:	x no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
63 DI:_			Dest	t: O	
		Mode	e	In	fo.

🖉 Note

- □ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

		O Start Manual R	Onicating OPrinter Error	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
		[F1	F2) (F3) [F4
	$\left(\right)$	01	02	03	04
	\square	Δ	I R		ZAAS120E

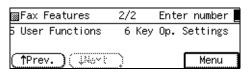
Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter] La	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

^PReference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual. Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



Solution Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "User Parameters" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings			number _	_
17 G4 Digital Line	18	Date/Tir	ne	
19 User Parameters	20	Prt.U.Pa	arameters	:
(↑Prev.)(↓Next)		PrevMenu	

🖉 Note

- □ If "User Parameters" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Select a number for a switch you wish to change by pressing [↑Switch] or [↓Switch].

Jser Parameters:	Refer	Op.	Manua I
Switch OO Default : OOO	00000		
Current : OOO	00000		
(†Switch) (↓Switch) [0	Cancel		OK

- Press a number key corresponding to the bit number you wish to change e.g., press [0] to change bit 0.
- When you have finished, press [OK].

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]**, the specified settings are canceled and the display shown in step **E** appears again.

Press [PrevMenu].

U Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Printing the User Parameter List

Print this list to see the current User Parameter settings.

Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Enter	fax no.
Memory Tra	ns.			100%
163 DI -			Dest:	0
		Mode		Info.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

	O Start Manual R	⊖ Printer ⊖ Error ⊂	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu	
	(F1)	[F2	F3	F4
$\left \left(\right \right $	01	02	03	04
\square	Δ	R		ZAAS120E

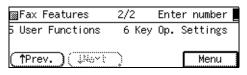
Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

∭User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number	
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax	
4	5		
Counter La	anguage	Exit	

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

✓ Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual. Enter the function number for "Key Op. Settings" with the number keys and press the [#] (Enter) key within 3 seconds.



🖉 Note

- □ If "Key Op. Settings" is not shown, press [↓Next].
- Enter the "Prt.U.Parameters" code with the number keys.

⊠Key Op. Settings			number	
17 G4 Digital Line	18	Date/Tir	ne	
19 User Parameters	20	Prt.U.Pa	arameter	rs
(↑Prev.) (↓Next)		PrevMer	nu

🖉 Note

□ If "Prt.U.Parameters" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].

Press the [Start] key to print the list.

To print User Parameters List, press Start key.

Cancel

🖉 Note

□ If you press **[Cancel]** before printing starts, the printing stops and the display shown in step **B** appears again.

2 Press [PrevMenu].

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Summer Time

Whenever local custom requires advancing the clock or setting the clock back, use this feature. You can easily move the clock forwards when daylight saving time begins, and back when it ends. To turn this feature on, change the User Parameter Switch 25 digit 7. \Rightarrow P.211 "*Printing the User Parameter List*"

Fax Auto Reset

If the machine is not used for a while, the display will return to the Ready condition. By default, the time that must elapse before this happens is 30 seconds. If you wish, you can change this interval to one of the following settings:

- 1 minute
- 3 minutes
- 5 minutes

1 Make sure that the machine is in Facsimile mode and the standby display is shown.

()Ready	Set	originals.	Ente	er fax	no.
Memory Tra	ns.				100%
163 DI -			Dest	: 0	
		Mod	e]	Inf	o.

🖉 Note

□ If the standby display is not shown, press the **[Facsimile]** key.

2 Press the **[User Tools/Counter]** key.

	O Start Manual R	⊖ ^{Printer} ⊂	Receive File Facsimile Error O TX File Statu:	
	[F1]	[F2	F3	[F4
$\left(\left(\right) \right)$	01	02	03	04
\square	Δ	B		ZAAS120E

Enter the code for "Fax" with the number keys.

⊠User Tools	Main Menu	Enter number
1 System	2 Copier	3 Fax
4	5	
Counter L	anguage	Exit

The Facsimile User Tool main menu appears.

Reference

For how to use the System User Tools, refer to the System Settings manual.

Enter the function number for "Initial Setup TX" with the number keys.

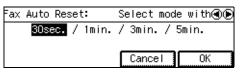
∭Fax Features	1/2	Enter	number _
1 Register/Delete		orts/L	ists
B Initial Setup TX	4 Ini	tial S	etup RX
(↑Prov.) ↓Next)	[Menu

🖉 Note

- □ If "Initial Setup TX" is not shown, press [↑Prev.] or [↓Next].
- Enter the "Fax Auto Reset" code with the number keys.

⊠Initial Setup TX	Enter number
1 Trans. Mode	2 Resolution
β Photo Original	4 Auto Image Density
5 Fax Auto Reset	PrevMenu

Select the interval using the ④ or
 (○) key. Then press [OK].



2 Press [PrevMenu].

B Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Fax Auto Off

If the machine is not used for a certain interval after faxing, it will turn itself off. This feature is called Fax Auto Off.

To turn the machine back on, press the [Operation Switch].

🖉 Note

For how to change the Fax Auto Off Timer, see the System Settings.

Paper Feed Selection

Using this feature, you can select which tray to print out the message. If you wish to use this feature, change User Parameter Switch 15 digits 0 to $2. \Rightarrow P.206$ "Changing the User Parameters"

RDS (Remote Diagnostic System)

If your machine has a problem, a service representative can perform various diagnostic tasks over the telephone line from the service station to try to find out what is wrong with your machine. The service technician can also use RDS to change some of your machine's settings if you request it.

If you wish to use this feature, change User Parameter Switch 25 digits $4. \Rightarrow$ P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"

8. Entering Text

ENTERING AND MODIFYING TEXT

This section describes how to enter characters. When you enter a character, it is shown at the position of the cursor. If there is a character at the cursor position, the entered character is shown before the character.

Available Characters

- Alphabetic characters ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU-VWXYZabcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
- Symbols
- Numerals 0123456789

Keys

- Number keys
 Use to enter numbers.
- Quick Dial 01/29 to Quick Dial 28/56 (A to Z)

Press these keys to enter upper and lower case letters.

♦ [A←→a]

Use to switch between upper and lower case.

Quick Dial 27/55

Press to enter a space.

Clear/Stop key

Deletes a character at the cursor position. You can delete a character at the right end of a line even if the cursor is placed to the right of the character.

🔹 🔇 or 🕑

Use to move the cursor left or right.

🖉 Note

□ If you wish to enter symbols, press **[Symbols]**.



- Flip the plate to access Quick Dial keys not shown.
- □ Quick Dial 01/29 means Quick Dial key 01 or 29.

🖓 Wild Cards

When you register RTIs or CSIs for multiple destinations, you can register a sequence of characters common to these identifications as a wild card instead of registering every identification.

If a destination has an RTI or CSI containing a wild card, the machine determines that the destination matches the registered destination.

Not using a wild card

Destination to be registered (RTI)	Number of regis- tered identifica- tions
NEW YORK BRANCH	3
HONG KONG BRANCH	
SYDNEY BRANCH	

Using a wild card

Destination to be registered (RTI)	Number of regis- tered identifica- tions
BRANCH	1

Limitation

□ You can register up to 30 wild cards.

🖉 Note

- □ Compare identifications by neglecting spaces.
- You can use wild cards for the following functions:
 - Special RX Nos. ⇒ P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"
 - Authorized Reception ⇒ P.186 "Authorized Reception"
 - Forwarding ⇒ P.190 "Forwarding"

.

How To Enter Text

Entering letters

1 Press $[A \leftarrow \rightarrow a]$ to switch between Uppercase and Lowercase.

Enter	name		
			▶Uppercase
_			
(A←	a) (Syn	bols)(Cancel	ОК

2 Press a Quick Dial key.

A letter is entered and the cursor moves.

🖉 Note

- □ If you wish to enter another character continuously, repeat step **2**.
- □ If you wish to insert a character, press the ④ or ⑤ key to move the cursor to a character you want to enter.

Enter name	
	▶Uppercase
REPORRT_	<u>.</u>
(A⇔a)(Symbols)	Cancel OK

Entering Symbols

Press [Symbols].

The available symbols are shown on the display.

2 Select the desired symbol by pressing [\uparrow Prev.] and [\downarrow Next].

Буг	nbo l	s	1/3	3P				E	Enter	nu	mber	
þ1	!	02	~	03	#		04	\$	- 05	*	06	8.
þ7	,	08	(09)		10	*	11	+	12	,
Ċ	No.	;v,		↓Nex1	t)					ance	I

Symbo	ols	2/3P			E	inter	nu	mber	
þ1 –	02	. 03	1	04	:	05	;	06	<
Þ7 =	08	> 09	?	10	0	11	[12	١.
(TPr	rev.)	(↓Nex:	t)				С	ance	

Symbol	s	3/3	P		En	ter	num	ber	
þ1]	02	^	03 _	04	`	05	{	06	Ι
þ7 }	08	~							
(† Pre	×.)[]	260-11				Ca	ncel	

Enter the number of the symbol you wish to insert with the number keys.

Enter name		
	,	Uppercase
	*	
(A⇔a)(Symbols Cancel	OK

The symbol is entered and the cursor moves.

🖉 Note

- □ If you wish to enter another symbol, repeat steps **2** and **3**.
- □ If you wish to insert a character, press the ④ or ⑤ key to move the cursor to a character you want to enter.

Enter name		
	1	▶Uppercase
REPORRT,		
(A⇔a)(Symbols)	Cancel	OK

Entering Numbers

Press a number key.

The numeral is entered and the cursor moves.

🖉 Note

□ If you wish to insert a character, press the ④ or ⑤ key to move the cursor to a character you want to enter.

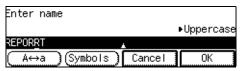
Enter name	
	▶Uppercase
REPORRT_	
(A↔a) (Symbols) Cancel	OK

Deleting characters

Press the ③ or ⑤ key to move the cursor to a character you want to delete.

Enter name		
		▶Uppercase
REPORRT,		
(A⇔a)(Symbols)	Cancel	OK
-		

Press the [Clear/Stop] key.



The character at the cursor position is deleted .

Enter name		
	∍U	ppercase
REPORT		
(A⇔a)(Symbols)	Cancel	OK

🖉 Note

□ If you wish to delete another character, repeat steps **1** and **2**.

9. Maintaining Your Machine

CONNECTING THE MACHINE TO A TELEPHONE LINE AND TELEPHONE

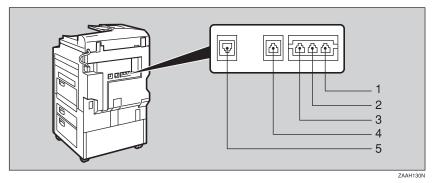
Connecting the Telephone Line

To connect the machine to a telephone line, use a snap-in modular type connector.

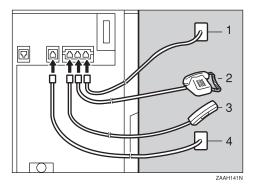
∰Important

□ Make sure the connector is the correct type before you start.

Where to connect the machine



When using a modular type connector



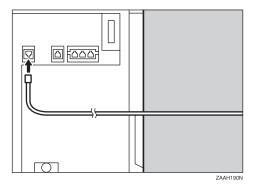
- 1. G3
- 2. External Telephone
- 3. Handset
- 4. Extra G3
- 5. G4

Connecting the Machine to the ISDN

Optional ISDN Unit required.

For how to install the optional ISDN unit, please contact your service representative.

Connect the machine to the ISDN with a modular type connector.

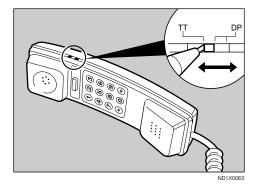


Connecting the Optional External Telephone

You can connect the optional handset or an external telephone to the machine for making telephone calls.

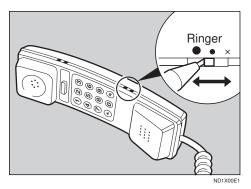
🖉 Note

- □ Some telephones cannot be connected or may suffer reduced functionality.
- Specifying the optional handset line type



The switch on the handset should be in the appropriate position-TT (Tone Dialing) or DP (Pulse Dialing).

Adjusting the optional handset bell volume



Adjust the optional handset ringer volume using the volume switch.

Selecting the Line Type

Select the line type to which the machine is connected. There are two types: tone and pulse dial.

Select the Line Type using "PSTN Line Type" in "Key Operator Settings". The default settings is "Tone". \Rightarrow P.200 "G3 Analog Line"

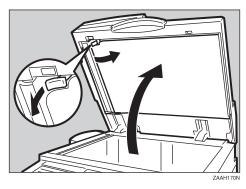
REPLACING THE STAMP CARTRIDGE

The ARDF is required.

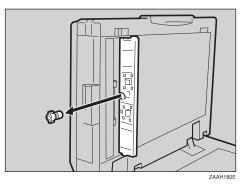
When the stamp is getting to become lighter, replace the cartridge.

Note

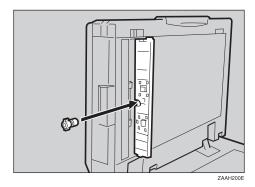
- Use the cartridge specified for this machine.
- **1** Lift the document feeder and open the stamp cover.



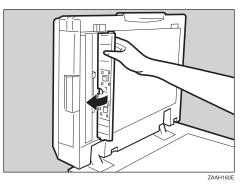
2 Pull out the cartridge.



3 Set a new cartridge.



Replace the stamp cover until it clicks.



5 Close the document feeder.

🖉 Note

Hold down the center part of the cover to make sure that it is closed completely.

10. Appendix

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

Expansion Memory (32MB: DIMM)

This allows you to send and receive fax messages at high resolution (Fine or Super Fine). If you need this option, please consult your service representative.

Up to about 400 pages can be stored in memory.

The above figure is for an ITUT#1 chart printed on this supplier's standard A4 paper and scanned in using the following settings:

- Resolution: Standard
- Image Density: Auto
- Original Type: Text

Fax Function Upgrade Unit

JBIG compression for transmission/reception becomes possible.

Wemory Capacity

• With optional Expansion Memory and Fax Function Upgrade Unit: 2,400 pages

Measured using a ITU-T#1 chart (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution.

🖉 Note

□ If you would like to install both of these, please contact your service representative.

.

• Vertified Extended Features

You can extend the following features.

Function	Without Fax Function Up- grade Unit	With Fax Function Up- grade Unit
Speed dial code	100	1,000
Personal code	20	50
Memory Capacity for Memory Transmission/ Reception	160 sheet	2,400 sheet with optional Expansion Memory and Fax Function Upgrade Unit
Memory Transmission file	200	1,000
Auto Document	6	18
Communication Result	last 100 communications	last 900 communications
Specific Sender	30	50

.

ISDN Unit (ISDN Option Type 270)

This allows you to send and receive messages using the ISDN (Integrated Service Digital Network).

Extra G3 Interface Unit (G3 Interface Unit Type 270)

This option provides one extra G3 line connection.

Duplex Unit (AD360)

With the Duplex Unit 2-sided printing becomes available.

PC-Fax Expander (PC-Fax Expander Type 185)

By installing a PC-FAX Expander, you can use this machine as a scanner, a PC-FAX modem and a convenience printer. If you need this option, please consult your service representative.

SPECIFICATIONS

Standard	G3, G4 (option)
Resolution	G3:
	8×3.85/mm•200×100dpi (Standard), 8×7.7/ mm•200×200dpi (Detail), 8×15.4/mm•200×400dpi (Fine), 16×15.4/mm•400×400dpi (Super Fine: optional Expansion Memory required)
	G4:
	200×100dpi (Standard), 200×200dpi (Detail), 400×400dpi (Super Fine: optional Expansion Memory required)
Transmission Time	G3: 3 seconds at 28,800bps, Standard resolution
	G4: 3 seconds, Detail resolution
Data Compression Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG (optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit required)
Maximum Original Size	Standard size: A3/11"×17" Irregular size: 304×1,200mm
Maximum Scanning Size	297×1,200mm/11"×47"
Print Process	Printing on standard paper using the laser
Transmission Speed	G3:
	33,600/31,200/28,800/26,400/24,000/21,600/19,200/ 16,800/14,400/12,000/9,600/7,200/4,800/2,400bps (auto shift down system)
	G4:
	64/56kbps (auto speed matching)

Power Consumption

Energy Saver (Auto Off) mode	Less than 20W (no options installed)
Night Timer Off mode	Less than 50W
Standby mode	140W
Memory Transmission	140W
Immediate Transmission	Less than 163W
Memory Reception	140W
Printing	Less than 405W
Maximum Power Consumption	Less than 1,440W

FUNCTION LIST

Advanced Transmission Features

Feature name	Description	Reference
Send Later	Sets the machine to auto- matically start transmis- sion or polling reception at an appointed time.	P.74 "SEND LATER"
Confidential Transmission	Sends a confidential mes- sage. This feature is divid- ed into Default ID Confidential Transmission and Override ID Confiden- tial Transmission.	P.76 "CONFIDENTIAL TRANSMISSION"
Personal Code TX	This will help you to check up on who has been using the machine and how of- ten.	P.78 "PERSONAL CODE TRANSMISSION"
Auto Document	Stores a commonly used original and prints or sends it directly.	P.79 "SENDING AN AUTO DOCUMENT"
2-Sided Transmission	Use to send 2-Sided origi- nals (double-sided origi- nal) from the Document Feeder (ARDF).	P.81 "2-SIDED TRANS- MISSION (DOUBLE-SID- ED TRANSMISSION)"
Book Fax	When sending a book-type original, this feature scans and sends the right and left pages one by one.	P.83 "BOOK FAX"
Irregular Scan Area	When sending a non- standard size original, this feature specifies the length and width. The machine scans the original in the specified size.	P.85 "CHOOSING THE AREA TO BE SCANNED YOURSELF (IRREGULAR SCAN AREA)"
Send First	You can have your mes- sage sent before any other queued messages.	⇒ P.87 "SEND FIRST"

10

Feature name	Description	Reference
Polling Transmission	Upon request from a desti- nation, the machine sends an original stored in mem- ory. This feature is divided into Free Polling, default ID Polling Transmission, and Override ID Polling Transmission.	P.88 "POLLING TRANS- MISSION"
Polling Reception	Sends a transmission re- quest to the other party and receives a message from the receiver. This feature is divided into Default ID polling Reception and ID Override Polling Recep- tion.	P.91 "POLLING RECEP- TION"
Transfer Request	Sends an original to a desti- nation via a facsimile equipped with the transfer station capability.	P.93 "TRANSFER RE- QUEST"
Options	Description	Reference
TTI Print	You can print a message in- cluding the name regis- tered as the TTI on the received message for each file.	P.96 "TTI (Transmit Termi- nal Identification) Print"
Label Insertion	If you register the receiver's name in a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, the receiver's name is automatically printed at the top of the re- ceived message.	P.96 "Label Insertion"
Create Margin Transmis- sion	Using this feature your message is sent at a re- duced size (93%) with a blank margin in the left.	P.96 "Create Margin Trans- mission"
Auto Reduction	If the receiver uses paper narrower than the mes- sage, it is sent reduced to the receiver paper.	P.97 "Auto Reduction"

Communication Information

Feature name	Description	Reference
Checking and Canceling the Transmission Files	This feature cancels, con- firms, or changes a file (res- ervation) for Memory Transmission, Confidential Transmission, Transfer Re- quest, Polling Reception, or Polling Transmission.	P.101 "CHECKING AND CANCELING TRANSMIS- SION FILES"
Printing the TX File List	The transmission file list can be manually printed. This list allows you to know the files stored in memory or the file num- bers.	P.106 "PRINTING A LIST OF FILES IN MEMORY (PRINT TX FILE LIST)"
Displaying the Transmis- sion Result	Part of the TCR can be shown on the display. The results of the last 50 trans- missions are displayed from the latest one.	P.107 "CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION RESULT (TX FILE STATUS)"
Displaying the Reception Result	Part of the TCR can be shown on the display. The results of the last 50 recep- tions are displayed from the latest one.	P.108 "CHECKING THE RECEPTION RESULT (RX FILE STATUS)"
Printing a Confidential Document	Prints messages received in Confidential Reception mode.	P.109 "PRINTING A CON- FIDENTIAL MESSAGE"
Printing the Memory Lock	Prints messages received in Memory Lock mode.	P.111 "PRINTING A FILE RECEIVED WITH MEMO- RY LOCK"
Printing the TCR	The TCR can be manually printed. This report shows the results of the last 50 communications.	P.113 "PRINTING THE TCR"
Displaying the Memory Status	The status of the memory is shown on the display.	P.114 "DISPLAYING THE MEMORY STATUS"

User Tools

Description	Reference
When you register a desti- nation in a Quick Dial, you can specify the destination only by pressing the Quick Dial key.	P.125 "Registering Quick Di- als"
When you register a desti- nation in a speed dial, you can specify the destination by entering the two-digit or three-digit speed dial code after pressing the [Speed Di- al] key.	P.138 "Registering Speed Di- als"
If you program a several destinations into a Group, you can dial with just a few keystrokes.	⇒ P.131 "Registering Groups"
Allows you to store a fre- quently used function or destination in a Quick Dial.	P.142 "Storing Keystroke Programs"
Allows you to store a fre- quently used original in. You can print or send the original directly as neces- sary.	P.147 "Registering an Auto Document"
Registers a frequently used original size in advance when you send a message with the Irregular Scan Area function.	P.151 "Registering An Irreg- ular Area"
This feature allows you to print various reports and lists manually. You can print the following reports and lists:	P.154 "REPORTS/LISTS"
 TCR Quick Dial list Group Dial list Speed Dial list Keystroke Program list 	
	 When you register a destination in a Quick Dial, you can specify the destination only by pressing the Quick Dial key. When you register a destination in a speed dial, you can specify the destination by entering the two-digit or three-digit speed dial code after pressing the [Speed Dial] key. If you program a several destinations into a Group, you can dial with just a few keystrokes. Allows you to store a frequently used function or destination in a Quick Dial. Allows you to store a frequently used original in. You can print or send the original directly as necessary. Registers a frequently used original size in advance when you send a message with the Irregular Scan Area function. This feature allows you to print various reports and lists: manually. You can print the following reports and lists: TCR Quick Dial list Group Dial list Speed Dial list

Feature name	Description	Reference
INITIAL SETUP TX	Setting the default setting for the transmission mode and scanning conditions and Fax Auto Reset timer. When you switch the pow- er on, the machine settings the items specified with this feature.	P.156 "INITIAL SETUP TX"
INITIAL SET UP RX	 Allows you to switch the following reception functions to On/Off: Reception Mode Chequered Mark Center Mark Print RX Time Multi-copy Reception 2-Sided Printing Reverse Order Printing Authorized RX Special RX Nos. Forwarding Paper Size Bypass 	P.158 "INITIAL SETUP RX"
Assigning User Function Keys	Stores a frequently used function in a User Function Key ([F1] to [F4]).	P.161 "ASSIGNING USER FUNCTION KEYS"
Key Operator Settings/ Personal Code	Registers personal code for each person. When every user enters a personal codes in sending messages, you can check the usage status for each person.	P.164 "KEY OPERATOR SETTINGS"
RTI/TTI	Registers information (RTI) to be shown on the display and printed in a report by a receiver's or sender's ma- chine. This feature also reg- isters information (TTI) to be printed from a destina- tion machine when you send a fax.	P.169 " <i>RTI/TTI</i> "

Feature name	Description	Reference
Memory Lock	Switch the Memory Lock On or Off. To use it, register an ID for printing a mes- sage received in Memory Lock mode.	P.171 "Memory Lock"
Counters	Check the transmission, re- ception, and totals on the display.	P.172 "Counters"
Monitor Volume	Adjusts the volume of monitoring and beeper sounds from the speaker inside the machine.	P.173 "Monitor Volume"
Economy Transmission	Economy Transmission means to send a fax when communication charges are lower. The Economy TX feature registers this time.	P.175 "Registering The Econ- omy Transmission Time"
ID Code	Registers an ID required for Transfer Request, Transfer Station, Default ID Polling Transmission, Default ID Polling Recep- tion, or ID Transmission.	P.176 "ID Code"
Multistep Transfer	Registers a transfer station in a group dial. This allows the message to be transmit- ted via multiple transfer stations more efficiently when the requesting party sends a transfer request to your machine.	P.178 "Multistep Transfer"
Special RX Nos.	Allow messages from spec- ified senders to be treated differently.	P.180 "Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.)"
Authorized Reception	When you register specific senders in advance, you can restrict senders from whom you receive mes- sage.	P.186 "Authorized Recep- tion"
Forwarding	Transfers received messag- es to a registered receiver (forwarding destination).	P.190 "Forwarding"

Feature name	Description	Reference
ECM	If a part of transmission fails due to a telephone line fault, this feature resends the failed part automatical- ly.	P.197 "ECM"
Transfer Report	Before using Transfer Re- quest, you need this Trans- fer Report setting.	P.198 "Transfer Report"
G3 Analog Line	Registers a line type and CSI when you connect the machine to the G3 analog line.	P.200 "G3 Analog Line"
G3 Digital Line	Registers own Fax num- bers, and CSI, and subad- dress when you connect the machine to a ISDN.	P.201 "G3 Digital Line"
G4 Digital Line	Registers an own Fax number, TID (Terminal ID) and subaddress when you connect the machine to a G4 digital line.	P.203 "G4 Digital Line"
Date/Time	Adjusts the date and the time as a reference.	P.205 "Date/Time"
Changing User Parameters	Allows you to change the function settings to meet your needs.	P.206 "Changing the User Parameters"
Printing User Parameter List	Allows you to print and check User Parameters set- tings.	P.211 "Printing the User Pa- rameter List"

INDEX

180 Degree Rotation Printing, 66 2-Sided Printing, 56, 65, 183 2-Sided Transmission, 81, 226

Α

Acceptable types of Originals, 15 Analog Line Connector, 3 Authorized Reception, 186, 231 Authorized Reception List, 189 Auto Document, 79, 147, 226, 229 Auto Document List, 149 Auto Fax RX Power-up, 12 Auto Identification, 42 Auto Image Density, 39 Automatic Redial, 27 Auto Reduction, 97, 227

В

Batch Transmission, 28 Book Fax, 83, 226 Broadcasting, 24 Bypass Paper Size, 160 Bypass Tray, 3

С

Canceling a Memory Transmission, 30 Canceling an Immediate Transmission, 36 Canceling a Transmission, 101 Center Mark, 64 Chain Dial, 47 Changing a Destination, 104 Changing The Line Type, 41 Changing the Transmission Time, 103 Checking/Canceling TX Files, 101, 228 Checking/Editing a File, 103 Checking the Transmission Result (TX File Status), 107 Check Modes, 13 Chequered Mark, 64 CIL, 69 CIL/TID Print, 69 Clear Modes, 5 Clear/Stop key, 6 Closed Network, 52, 97, 227

Combine 2 originals, 56, 67 Communicating Indicator, 4 Communication Failure Report, 29 Communication Information, 228 Components, 1 Confidential File, 119 Confidential File Indicator, 119 Confidential File Report, 110 Confidential ID, 176 Confidential Message, 109 Confidential Reception Indicator, 4 Confidential Transmission, 76, 226 Counters, 172, 231 Create Margin Transmission, 227 CSI, 200

D

Date/Time, 205, 232 Default ID Polling Reception, 62, 91 Default ID Polling Transmission, 88, 89 Density key (Contrast key), 5 Destination List, 103 Detail, 37 Dialing, 43 Dial label, 128 Display, 10 Displaying the Memory Status, 228 Displaying the Reception Result, 228 Displaying the Transmission Result, 228 Document Feeder (ARDF), 1 Dual Access, 12

Ε

ECM, 28, 34, 197, 232 Economy Transmission Time, 74, 175, 231 End Receiver, 60, 93, 95 Energy Saver key, 5 Entering letters, 216 Entering Numbers, 217 Entering symbols, 217 Entering Text, 215 Error Messages, 116 Error Report, 121 Expansion Memory, 223 Exposure Glass, 1 Extra G3 Interface Unit, 224

F

Facsimile Error Indicator, 120 Facsimile key, 6 Facsimile Mode (Auto Reception Mode), 59 Fax Auto Reset, 212 Fax Function Upgrade Unit, 223 F Code, 52 *PWD*, 63 SEP, 61 SID, 53 Finisher Unit, 22 Forwarding, 190, 231 Forwarding Station, 191 Free Polling Transmission, 88, 89 Function List, 226 Function Map, iv

G

G3 Analog Line, 200, 232 G3 Digital Line, 201, 232 G3/G4 Mode Selection, 161 G4 Digital Line, 203, 232 Group Dial, 229 Group Dial List, 155 Group Dial list, 137 Groups, 50, 131

Н

How to Set an Original, 19

I

ID Code, 176, 231 ID Override Polling Reception, 62 ID Override Polling Transmission, 89 ID Reception Closed Network, 61 ID Transmission, 52 Image density, 37 Image Density (Contrast), 38 Image Rotation, 66 Immediate Reception, 55 Immediate Transmission, 11, 23, 32 Indicators, 119 Initial Setup RX, 123, 158, 230 Initial Setup TX, 123, 156, 230 Internal Tray, 1 Interrupt key, 5 Irregular Area, 151, 229

Irregular Scan Area, 85, 226 ISDN, 220 ISDN Line Connector, 3 ISDN Unit (ISDN Option Type 270), 224

J

JBIG, 54, 63 JBIG Reception, 63 JBIG Transmission, 54

Κ

Key Operator Settings, 123, 164 Keystroke Program, 142, 229 Keystroke Program List, 145

L

Label Insertion, 96, 140, 227 Letters, 216

Μ

Main Power Switch, 1 Maintaining Your Machine, 219 Manual Dial, 35 Manual Image Density, 39 Memory Lock, 111, 171, 183, 231 Memory Lock ID, 176 Memory Reception, 56 Memory Status, 114 Memory Storage Report, 28 Memory Transmission, 11, 23, 24 Monitor Volume, 173, 231 Multi-copy, 56, 183 Multi-copy Reception, 65 Multi-port, 14 Multistep Transfer, 60, 178, 231

Ν

Number keys, 6, 44 Numbers, 217

0

On-hook Dial, 34 On Hook Dial key, 5 Operation Panel, 4 Operation Switch, 2 Optional External Telephone (Handset), 220 Optional extra G3 Interface Unit Connector, 3 Optional Handset/External Telephone Connector, 3 Original Type, 37, 38 Original Type key, 5 Output Tray, 22 Override ID Polling Reception, 91 Override ID Polling Transmission, 88

Ρ

Page Reduction, 68 Page Separation and Length Reduction, 67 Paper Feed Selection, 213 Pause, 45 Pause/Redial key, 5 PC-Fax Expander, 224 Personal Code, 164, 230 Personal Code Access, 12, 167 Personal Code List, 168 Personal Code Transmission, 78 Personal Code TX, 226 Photo, 38 Polling ID, 176 Polling Reception, 91, 227 Polling Reserve Report, 92 Polling Result Report, 92 Polling Transmission, 88, 227 Polling Transmission Clear Report, 90 Print Completion Beep, 64 Printing a Confidential Document, 228 Printing a File, 102 Printing an Auto Document, 150 Printing Functions, 64 Printing the Memory Lock, 228 Printing the TCR, 228 Printing the TX File List, 228 Print TX File List, 106

Q

Quick Dial, 43, 47, 125, 229 Quick Dial Flip Plate, 5 Quick Dial keys, 5 Quick Dial List, 127, 155

R

RDS, 213 Receive File Indicator, 4, 119 Reception Functions, 60 Reception Time, 64 Redial, 51 Register/Delete, 123, 125 Registering End Receivers for Multi-step Transfer, 134 Reports/Lists, 123, 154, 229 Requesting Party, 60, 93 Re-sending a File, 104 Resolution, 37, 157 Resolution key, 4 Reverse Order Printing, 56, 68 Reverse Printing, 183 RTI/TTI, 169, 230 RX File Status, 108

S

Scan Settings, 37 Selecting the Line Type, 221 Selecting the Reception Mode, 59 Sender Reception List, 189 Send First, 87, 226 Send Later, 74, 226 Simultaneous Broadcast, 13 Solving Problems, 117 Special RX Nos., 182, 231 Special Senders to Treat Differently (Special RX Nos.), 180 Specifications, 225 Specific Senders, 193 Specified Sender/Forwarding Station list, 196 Specified Sender List, 185 Speed Dial, 43, 48, 229 Speed Dial key, 5 Speed Dial List, 155 Speed Dial list, 141 Speed Dials, 138 Stamp, 52, 222 Stamp Key, 4 Standard, 37 Start key, 6 SUB, 52 Subaddress, 46 Substitute Reception, 56, 57, 119 Summer Time, 212 Super Fine, 37 Switches and Bits, 206 Symbols, 217

Т

TCR, 113, 154, 228

Telephone Directory, 49, 140 Telephone Line, 219 Telephone Mode, 59 Text, 38 Text-Photo, 38 TID, 69, 203 Tonal Signals, 46 Tone, 45 Tone key, 5 Toner, 115 Transfer Report, 198, 232 Transfer Request, 93, 227 Transfer Result Report, 61 Transfer Station, 60, 93 Transmission Features, 52 Transmission Mode, 157 Transmission Mode key, 4 Transmission Options, 96 Transmission Result Display, 161 Transmission Result Report (Immediate TX), 34 Transmission Result Report (Memory TX), 29 Transmission with Image Rotation, 13 Tray Select, 183 Tray Shift, 22 Troubleshooting, 115 TSI, 69 TSI Print, 69 TTI Print, 96, 141, 227

U

User Function Keys, 4, 161, 163, 230 User Functions, 123 User Parameter List, 207, 232 User Parameters, 206, 232 User Tools, 4, 123, 229

W

When the Selected Output Tray Becomes Full, 22 Wild Cards, 215